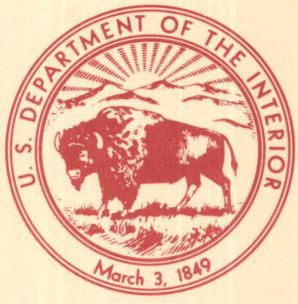
The Petroleum System—Status of Research and Methods, 1990

U.S. GEOLOGICAL SURVEY BULLETIN 1912



Petroleum System Definition and Classification Scheme

A petroleum system encompasses a hydrocarbon source rock and all generated oil and gas accumulations and includes all the geologic elements and processes that are essential if an oil and gas deposit is to exist. **Petroleum** includes concentrated occurrences of any of the following substances: thermal and microbial natural gas found in conventional reservoirs as well as in gas hydrate, tight sandstone, fractured shale, and coal; and condensates, crude oils, heavy oils, and solid bitumen found in reservoirs in siliciclastic and carbonate rocks. **System** describes the interdependent geologic elements that create oil and gas accumulations. These elements include a petroleum source rock, migration path, reservoir rock, seal, and trap; and the geologic processes that create each of these basic elements. All these elements must be correctly placed in time and space so that organic matter included in a source rock can be converted into a petroleum deposit. A petroleum system exists wherever all the basic elements are known to occur or are thought to occur.

Characteristics and Limits.—The stratigraphic, areal, and temporal extent of the petroleum system is specific. Stratigraphically, the system includes the following rock units: a petroleum source rock, rocks through which migration has occurred, a sealed reservoir rock (trap), and the rock overburden (time and temperature) required for maturity. The areal extent of the petroleum system is defined by a line that circumscribes the mature source rock and all oil and gas deposits, conventional and unconventional, originating from that source. Since microbial gas originates from immature source rocks, the gas deposits themselves or the geologic setting defines the extent of the system.

The events of a petroleum system are defined by two periods of geologic time, the duration time and the preservation time. The duration is the time required to form a petroleum system. If the source rock is the first or oldest unit deposited and the overburden necessary to mature the source rock is the last or youngest element, then the age difference between the oldest and youngest element is the duration of the petroleum system. For example, a Devonian source rock (380–390 Ma) is buried by Pennsylvanian and Permian rocks (250–290 Ma) to maximum depth in the Late Permian(250 Ma); expulsion (primary migration) of hydrocarbons occurs during the Permian (250–275 Ma). These hydrocarbons migrate (secondary) and accumulate in reservoirs of Pennsylvanian age (300–315 Ma) and in traps that formed in the Late Pennsylvanian and Early Permian time (270–290 Ma). The duration of this petroleum system is 140 million years.

Preservation time starts after migration (secondary) and accumulation are complete. If little or no tectonic activity occurs during the preservation time, accumulations will remain in their original position. Remigration (tertiary) happens during the preservation time if folding, faulting, uplift, or erosion occur. If all accumulations are destroyed during the preservation time, no record of the petroleum system will be left. In the example, the preservation time is 250 million years.

Level of Certainty.—A petroleum system can be identified at three levels of certainty: **known**, **hypothetical**, and **speculative**.The level of certainty indicates the confidence for which a particular source rock has generated the hydrocarbons in an accumulation. In a **known** petroleum system, in the case of oil, a good geochemical match exists between the source rock and the oil accumulations; or, in the case of natural gas, the gas is produced from a gas source rock. In a **hypothetical** petroleum system, geochemical information identifies a source rock, but no geochemical match exists between the source rock and the petroleum deposits. In a **speculative** petroleum system, the existence of source rocks and petroleum accumulations is postulated entirely on the basis of geologic or geophysical evidence. At the end of the system's name, the level of certainty is indicated by (!) for **known**, (.) for **hypothetical**, and (?) for **speculative**.

Petroleum System Name—The name of the petroleum system includes the source rock, followed by the name of the major reservoir rock, and then the symbol expressing the level of certainty. For example, the Torok-Nanushuk(.) is a **hypothetical** system on the North Slope of Alaska consisting of the Cretaceous Torok Formation as the source rock and the Nanushuk Group sandstone as the major reservoir rock.

Classification Scheme.—A petroleum system can be classified into one of 12 categories, based on the type of source rock (I, II, or III; Tissot and Welte, 1984, p. 512), the composition of the reservoir rock(siliciclastic or carbonate), and whether the system is purebred or hybrid. A purebred petroleum system was deposited in a geologic setting in which the structural framework did not change significantly during the geologic life of the system; in contrast, a hybrid system includes a major structural change, without which a petroleum system would not have formed. The composition of the reservoir rock refers to the lithology of the largest petroleum deposit, whether it is siliciclastic or carbonate. The organic-matter type may be I, II, or III and is distinguished on the basis of the hydrogen and oxygen indices of the kerogen when plotted on the van Krevelen diagram (Tissot and Welte, 1984). The organic-matter type that produced the petroleum in the largest petroleum deposit is used to classify the system. The largest petroleum deposit refers to a single pool that contains the most in-place hydrocarbons, or a series of pools that cumulatively contain the most in-place hydrocarbons in the system at the time of discovery.

Reference Cited.—Tissot, B.P., and Welte, D.H., 1984, Petroleum formation and occurrence: New York, Springer-Verlag, 699 p.

The Petroleum System—Status of Research and Methods, 1990

LESLIE B. MAGOON, Editor

U.S. GEOLOGICAL SURVEY BULLETIN 1912

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR
MANUEL LUJAN, JR., Secretary

U.S. GEOLOGICAL SURVEY
Dallas L. Peck, Director

Library of Congress catalog card number 89-600765

UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE, WASHINGTON : 1989

For sale by the Books and
Open-File Reports Section,
U.S. Geological Survey
Federal Center, Box 25425
Denver, CO 80225

CONTENTS

FIGURES

TABLES

The Petroleum System—Status of Research and Methods, 1990

Abstract

Leslie B. Magoon, *Editor*

This publication in 17 individually authored summaries by U.S. Geological Survey scientists presents a revised and expanded list of the petroleum systems within the United States and summarizes the status of research for a number of petroleum-related topics and investigative methods. The revised and expanded list now includes 130 petroleums systems within the United States, 25 of which are classified as *known* systems.

In a brief description of the usefulness of the stratigraphic cross section, Molenaar shows how this type of graphic illustration depicts important vertical and lateral lithostratigraphic relations. Two summaries on ancient and modern deep-water sediments are included. The carbonate slope apron and base-of-slope apron are compared and contrasted by Cook and Mullins. Summarizing the work of many investigators, Normark indicates how siliciclastic fan models based on field mapping, submarine acoustic imaging, and subsurface seismic stratigraphy compare and contrast. Investigations about porosity in petroleum reservoir rocks are discussed by Schmoker and Gautier. Pollastro discusses the uses of clay minerals as exploration tools that help to elucidate basin, source-rock, and reservoir history. The status of fission-track analysis, which is useful for determining the thermal and depositional history of deeply buried sedimentary rocks, is outlined by Naeser. The various ways workers have attempted to determine accurate ancient and present-day subsurface temperatures are summarized with numerous references by Barker. Clayton covers three topics: (1) the role of kinetic modeling in petroleum exploration, (2) biological markers as an indicator of depositional environment of source rocks and composition of crude oils, and (3) geochemistry of sulfur in source rocks and petroleum. Anders and Hite evaluate the current status of evaporite deposits as a source for crude oil.The current knowledge on the effect of biodegradation on crude oils is covered by Michael. Research on the origin and recovery of heavy oil and natural bitumen is discussed by Meyer. Two contributions on gaseous hydrocarbons are included: Kvenvolden discusses the latest thinking on the origin of methane and nitrogen, redefines the terms associated with the origin of methane, and suggests possible implications these ideas have on exploration strategy; and Collett and Kvenvolden review investigations of marine and continental natural gas hydrate occurrences. Crovelli reviews quantitative aspects of petroleum resource assessment methodologies. Lastly, publications written by personnel of the USGS Branch of Petroleum Geology and published during 1988 are listed in a separate bibliography.

Manuscript approved for publication, September 26, 1989.

Identified Petroleum Systems within the United States—1990

By Leslie B. Magoon[1]

INTRODUCTION

Basin analysis, petroleum system, play, and prospect may be viewed as separate levels of investigation, all of which are needed to better understand the genesis and habitat of hydrocarbons. Basin analysis emphasizes structural depressions and the included sedimentary rocks, the petroleum system emphasizes the genetic relation between a source rock and an accumulation, the play emphasizes structural and stratigraphic reservoir trends, and the prospect emphasizes individual traps. Except for the petroleum system, these terms are widely utilized by petroleum geologists. A petroleum system encompasses a hydrocarbon source rock and all generated oil and gas accumulations and includes all those elements that are essential for an oil and gas deposit to exist: petroleum source rock, migration path, reservoir rock, seal, and trap (Magoon, 1988a). The system has a stratigraphic limit, geographic extent, and time duration. Its name combines the names of the source rock and the reservoir rock and also expresses a level of certainty. Petroleum systems are classified by using criteria such as type of source and reservoir rock and the complexity of its geologic history, as explained in Magoon (1988b; table 1).

The list of petroleum systems within the United States (table 2) has been revised and expanded since the last tabulation in 1988, in which 119 systems were identified (Magoon, 1988b). As published information about U.S. petroleum systems becomes available, the list is revised to reflect this new information. Presently 130 petroleum systems have been identified, of which, 89 are purebred (structurally simple) and 41 are hybrid (structurally complex) (table 1). Of 12 possible categories, the 2 most common systems are in the purebred siliciclastic category and have either type II (32) or type III (19) source rocks (rocks containing type II or III organic matter). Presently, all hybrid carbonate systems contain type II source rocks. Siliciclastic reservoirs (90) occur more than twice as often as carbonate reservoirs (40). The most common source rock is type II (73), followed by type III (41), the least common being type I (16). For an explanation of kerogen types, see Tissot and Welte (1984).

Table 2 in this publication is reorganized from table 6 in Magoon (1988b). The petroleum systems in each category are arranged alphabetically. Rather than identifying their location by State, the geological provinces of the American Association of Petroleum Geologists are indicated for each system (Meyer, 1974; fig. 1, table 2), and the geological province code number along with the *Correlation of stratigraphic units in North America* (COSUNA) chart column number are shown. Because the petroleum system is independent of political boundaries (States), and may even be independent of sedimentary basins or arches, it is more appropriate to indicate the approximate geographic extent of each system using already established geological provinces.

Since the last tabulation in 1988, the list of petroleum systems within the United States has been expanded and revised to include 11 more systems and new information about previously identified systems (table 2). The 11 new systems are as follows: Chainman-Garrett Ranch(!)(Poole and Claypool, 1984), Desmoinesian-O sandstone(!)(Clayton, 1989), Mowry-Muddy(!)(Momper and Williams, 1984), Niobrara(!) (Rice, 1984), Niobrara/Carlisle-Frontier(!) (Momper and Williams, 1984), Ozette-Hoh(!)(Kvenvolden and others, 1988), Point Pleasant-Clinton(!)(Cole and others, 1987), Soda Lake-Painted Rock(.)(Lillis, 1988), Stillwater-Kulthieth(.)(Magoon, in press), Viola(!)(Jones and Philp, in press), and Woodford-Sycamore(!)(Jones and Philp, in press). Three petroleum systems have been reclassified from purebred to hybrid because the systems have been affected by either the Ouachita orogeny (Woodford/Chattanooga-Paleozoic(.)) or the Laramide orogeny (Aneth/Elbert-McCracken(?) and Tyler(!)). Five petroleum systems are reclassified from type III source to type II (G.E. Claypool, oral commun.; Cole and others, 1987); these are Devonian Black Shales-Venango(!), Ohio-Big Injun(.), Ohio Shale(!), Ohio-Weir(?), and Sumbury-Berea(!). The names of six petroleum systems have been changed: Bakken-Madison(.) is now Exshaw-Madison(.); Hue-Sagavanirktok/Canning(!) is now Hue-Sagavanirktok(!); Monterey-Sisquoc(.) is now Monterey-Tinaquic(.); Poul Creek-Katalla(?) is now Poul Creek(.); Salina-Niagaran(.) is now Salina A1-Niagaran(!); and Triassic-Newark(?) is now Newark(?). The level of certainty for four petroleum systems has been revised: Green River-Wasatch(.) is now Green River-Wasatch(!)(Tissot and others, 1978); Poul Creek-Katalla(?) is now Poul Creek(.)(Magoon, in press); Salina-Niagaran(.) is now Salina A1-Niagaran(!)(Gardner and Bray, 1984); and

[1]U.S. Geological Survey, Menlo Park, Calif.

Table 1. Distribution of the 130 identified U.S. petroleum systems according to categories of the petroleum system classification scheme

[Numbers in parentheses indicate number of petroleum systems of that category. An example petroleum system is recorded for each category in nomenclature column. Classification scheme is explained in Magoon (1988b)]

Geologic setting	Reservoir rock type	Source rock type	Nomenclature Source–reservoir (certainty)	Number of systems
Purebred (89)	Siliciclastic (58)	I	Green River–Wasatch(!)	7
		II	Heath–Tyler(!)	32
		III	Torok–Nanushuk(.)	19
	Carbonate (31)	I	Austin Chalk(!)	8
		II	Smackover(!)	16
		III	Chattanooga–Fort Payne(.)	7
Hybrid (41)	Siliciclastic (32)	I	Sheep Pass–Garrett Ranch(!)	1
		II	Ellesmerian(!)	16
		III	Tuxedni–Hemlock(.)	15
	Carbonate (9)	I	None	0
		II	Winnipeg–Red River(!)	9
		III	None	0
			Total	130

Table 2. Revised, reorganized, and expanded list of petroleum systems within the United States

[Level of certainty: (!), known; (.), hypothetical; (?), speculative; for certainty definitions see Magoon, 1988b]

AC, Atlantic Coast region (Jordan and Smith, 1983)
CCA, Central California region (Bishop and Davis, 1984a)
CSR, Central and Southern Rockies region (Kent and others, 1988)
GB, Great Basin region (Hintze, 1985)
GC, Gulf Coast region (Braunstein and others, 1988)
MBA, Midwestern Basin and Arches region (Shaver, 1985)
MC, Mid-Continent region (Adler, 1987)
NAL, Northern Alaska region (Schaff and Gilbert, 1987a)
NAP, Northern Appalachian region (Patchen and others, 1985a)
NCA, Northern California region (Bishop and Davis, 1984b)
NE, New England region (Skehan, 1985)
NMC, Northern Mid-Continent region (Bergstrom and Morey, 1985)
NRW, Northern Rockies/Williston basin region (Ballard and others, 1983)
NW, Northwest region (Hull and others, 1988)
PBR, Piedmont/Blue Ridge region (Higgins, 1987)
SAL, Southern Alaska region (Schaff and Gilbert, 1987b)
SAP, Southern Appalachian region (Patchen and others, 1985b)
SCA, Southern California region (Bishop and Davis, 1984c)
SSMC, Southwest/Southwest Mid-Continent region (Hills and Kottlowski, 1983)
TOT, Texas-Oklahoma Tectonic region (Mankin, 1987)
CSD/C, Geological province code number (Meyer, 1974)/COSUNA chart stratigraphic column number

Petroleum systems Source–reservoir(certainty)	Petroleum type	Geographic/stratigraphic location Region	CSD/C
PUREBRED, siliciclastic reservoir			
	Type I source		
Austin Chalk/Eagleford–Woodbine(?)	Oil	GC	220;260/3,6,10
Cabot Head–Medina(.)	Oil	NAP	160/21
Glenwood–Rose Run(?)	Oil	NAP	160/8
Green River–Wasatch(!)[1]	Oil	CSR	575/17
Neogene–Salt Lake(?)	Oil	GB	625/15
Pennsylvanian cannel coals–sandstone(.)	Oil	NAP;SAP	160/1
Rose Hill–Keefer(?)	Gas	NAP	160/7-10
	Type II source		
Conasauga–Rome(.)	Oil	NAP;SAP	160/20
Curtis–Entrada/Morrison(?)	Oil	CSR	535;595/13
Devonian–Berea(?)	Oil	MBA	305/3-6
Devonian Black Shales–Venango(!)[2]	Gas/oil	NAP	160/17,21
Eel River–Rio Dell(?)	Gas	NCA	720/1-2
Heath–Tyler(!)	Oil	NRW	510/12
Hue–Sagavanirktok(!)[3]	Oil	NAP	890/5-6
Kreyenhagen–Gatchell(?)	Oil	CCA	745/16-21,27-29
Lower Cretaceous–Paluxy(?)	Oil/gas	GC	210;220;230;260
Michigan–Stray(.)	Oil/gas	MBA	305/4-6
Miocene(?)	Oil	CCA	735/6
Monterey(?)	Oil	CCA	725/3
Monterey–Puente(!)	Oil	SCA	760/8-11

Table 2. Revised, reorganized, and expanded list of petroleum systems within the United States—Continued

Petroleum systems Source–reservoir(certainty)	Petroleum type	Geographic/stratigraphic location Region	CSD/C
PUREBRED, siliciclastic reservoir			
	Type II source—Continued		
Monterey–Repetto/Pico(.)	Oil	SCA	755/4-5
Monterey–Tinaquaic(.)[3]	Oil	CCA;SCA	740;750/2
Monterey–Stevens/Kern River(.)	Oil	CCA	745/16-21,27-29
Moreno(?)	Oil	CCA	745/29
Mowry–Muddy(!)[4]	Oil	CSR	540/20
New Albany(.)	Gas	MBA	315/7-12,19-21
Newark(?)[3]	Oil	NE;PBR	100/8;150/11
Nonesuch–Keweenawan(?)	Gas	MC;NMC	310/20-21;320;325;370/10;380
Ohio–Big Injun(.)[2]	Gas/oil	NAC	160/8
Ohio Shale(!)[2]	Gas/oil	NAP;SAP	160/1
Ohio–Weir(?)[2]	Gas	NAP;SAP	160/1
Point Pleasant–Clinton(!)[4]	Oil	NAP	160/15-16
Soda Lake–Painted Rock(.)[4]	Oil	SCA	750/1
Sunbury–Berea(!)[2]	Oil/gas	MBA;NAP	300/16,18;160/1-3,7-8
Tuscaloosa(.)	Gas	GC	220/10
Unkown–Eocene(?)	Oil	GC	210;220;230;260/5,7,10,11
Unknown–Eutaw/Selma(?)	Oil	GC	210;260/6,12,13
Unknown–San Miguel/Olmos(?)	Oil	GC	220/1
Woodford–Silurian/Devonian(.)	Oil	SSMC	430/18-21
	Type III source		
Antrim(.)	Gas	MBA	305/15
Beluga–Sterling(.)	Gas	SAL	820/13
Cenozoic(.)	Oil/gas	GC	220/2-4,10-11
Chester(?)	Gas	TOT	200/17-19
Cotton Valley(?)	Gas	GC	210;230;260
Cretaceous(.)	Gas/oil	CSR	535/12-14
Cretaceous(!)	Gas	MC;NMC;NRW	320;380;390;395;515
Forbes(.)	Gas	NCA	730/23-24
Hornbrook(?)	Gas	NCA	715/5
Jurassic–Cretaceous(?)	Gas	Atlantic offshore	-
Marcellus–Oriskany(.)	Gas	NAP	160/1-3,8-14
Miocene(.)	Gas	GC	210/14,16,17
Mississippian coals–sandstones(.)	Gas	SAP	160/25-26
Pennsylvanian coals(!)	Gas	NAP;SAP	160/1-2,7-9,12-13
Pennsylvania–Late Paleozoic(!)	Gas	MC;SSMC;TOT	335;345/4-5;350/6;355;360/27-29 365;370/26;375/25;440
Starkey–Winters(.)	Gas	NCA	730/26
Stepovak–Bear Lake(.)	Gas	SAP	845/10-11
Sunbury–Murrysville(.)	Gas	NAL	160/17-19
Torok–Nanushuk(.)	Oil	NAL	890/1-3
PUREBRED, carbonate reservoir			
	Type I source		
Athens–Trenton/Knox(?)	Oil	NAP;SAP	160
Austin Chalk(!)	Oil/gas	GC	220/1,4,5,11
Glenwood–Trempealeau(?)	Gas	NAP	160/15
Salina–Newburg(?)	Oil	NAP	160/16
Simpson–Viola(!)	Oil	MC;SSMC;TOT	335;350/6;355/1-2;360/27;365 370/26;375/25
Simpson–Viola/Hunton(.)	Oil	MC	335/21
Trenton(!)	Oil	MBA	300/13-14;315/7-12,19-21
Utica–Trenton(!)	Gas	MBA;NAP;NE	110;160/20;300

Table 2. Revised, reorganized, and expanded list of petroleum systems within the United States—Continued

Petroleum systems	Petroleum	Geographic/stratigraphic location	
Source–reservoir(certainty)	type	Region	CSD/C
PUREBRED, carbonate reservoir			
	Type II source		
Conasauga–Knox(?)	Oil	SAP;TOT	160/1-8;200/17-19
Devonian–Detroit River/Traverse(?)	Oil	MBA	305/3-6
Desmoinesian–O sandstone(!)[4]	Oil	CSR	540/20
Dollar Bay(.)	Oil	GC	140/31
EauClair–Knox(?)	Gas	MBA	315/9-12,19-21
Niobrara(!)[4]	Gas	CSR	540/21;450/31
Niobrara/Carlisle–Frontier(!)[4]	Oil	CSR	540/20–21
Ordovician–Prairie du Chien/Black River/Trenton(?)	Oil	MBA	300/14-16;305/3-6,15
Pennsylvanian(.)	Oil	SSMC	430/18-19
Pennsylvanian(.)	Oil	SSMC	430/20-21
Permian(.)	Oil	SSMC	430/18-19
Permian(.)	Oil	SSMC	430/20-21
Salina A-1–Niagaran(!)[1,3]	Oil	MBA	305/3-6
Simpson–Ellenberger/Simpson(.)	Gas/oil	SSMC	430/19-21
Smackover(!)	Oil	GC	210;220;230;260
Sunniland(!)	Oil	GC	140/31
	Type III source		
Chattganooga–Fort Payne(.)	Oil/gas	SAP	160/11-13
Marcellus–Bass Islands(.)	Gas	NAP	160/21
Marcellus–Onondaga(.)	Gas	NAP	160/22
Monroe(?)	Gas	GC	230/9
Ohio/Chattanooga–Corniferous(?)	Oil/gas	MBA;SAP	160/18;300/25
Ohio/Sunbury–Greenbriar/Newman(?)	Gas	NAP;SAP	160/1-2,18,21
Sligo(?)	Gas	GC	220/5,7,14
HYBRID, siliciclastic reservoir			
	Type I source		
Sheep Pass–Garrett Ranch(!)[1]	Oil	GB	625/9,11
	Type II source		
Aneth/Elbert–McCracken(?)[5]	Oil	CSR	585/23
Aspen/Bear River–Nugget/Madison(?)	Oil	CSR	535;570/11
Chainman–Garrett Ranch(!)[4]	Oil	GB	625/11
Chainman–White Rim(?)	Oil	CSR;GB	585;630/29
Domengine–Cierbo/Briones(?)	Oil/gas	CCA	725/1
Ellesmerian(!)	Oil	NAL	890/1-6
Greenhorn–Dakota(.)	Oil	CSR	580/29
Jurassic/Cretaceous(?)	Oil	NRW	500/10,11;505/6,7;510/12
Mancos–Mesaverde(.)	Gas	CSR	580/29
Mancos–Tocito(.)	Oil	CSR	580/29
Minnelusa(!)	Oil	CSR	515;540/6
Phosphoria–Weber(!)	Oil	CSR	505-535;570;575;615;630
Todilto–Entrada(.)	Oil	CSR	580/29
Tyler(!)[5]	Oil	NRW	395/19
Utica–Beekmantown(!)	Gas	NE	100/14
Woodford/Chattanooga–Paleozoic(.)[5]	Oil	MC;SSMC;TOT	335;345/4-5;350/6;355;360/27-29 365;370/26;375/25;385;440;450
	Type III source		
Cretaceous(?)	Oil/gas	CSR	520/4
Cretaceous(?)	Oil	CSR	530/8
Cretaceous(?)	Oil/gas	CSR	540/21
Cretaceous(?)	Oil	CSR	515/6
Cretaceous(?)	Gas	CSR	535/9,15

Table 2. Revised, reorganized, and expanded list of petroleum systems within the United States—Continued

Petroleum systems	Petroleum	Geographic/stratigraphic location	
Source–reservoir(certainty)	type	Region	CSD/C
HYBRID, siliciclastic reservoir			
	Type III source—Continued		
Cretaceous(?)	Gas	CSR	545/20
Cretaceous–Tertiary(?)	Gas	CSR	500/4
Cretacous–Tertiary(!)	Gas	CSR	530/8
Lewis–Picture Cliffs(.)	Gas	CSR	580/29
Mesaverde(.)	Gas	CSR	575/17
Mesaverde(.)	Gas	CSR	595/18
Ozette–Hoh(!)[4]	Oil	NW	710/14
Poul Creek(.)[1,3]	Oil	SAL	810/24
Stillwater–Kulthieth(.)[4]	Oil	SAL	810/24,26-27
Tuxedni–Hemlock(.)	Oil	SAL	820/13
HYBRID, carbonate reservoir			
	Type II source		
Bakken–Madison(!)	Oil	NRW	395/13-20
Chainman–Simonson(?)	Oil	GB	625/11,12,17,18,20
Conasauga–Knox(?)	Gas	PBR	150/4-6
Exshaw–Madison(.)[3]	Oil	NRW	500/7,10,11;505
Favret(?)	Oil	GB	625/2
Paradox–Hermosa(.)	Oil	CSR	585/23
Winnipeg–Red River(!)	Oil	NRW	395/13-20
Woodford–Sycamore(!)[4]	Oil	TOT	350/6
Viola(!)[4]	Oil	TOT	350/6

[1]Level of certainty revised.
[2]Reclassified petroleum system from type III source.
[3]Petroleum system name revised.
[4]Newly identified petroleum system.
[5]Reclassified petroleum system from purebred.

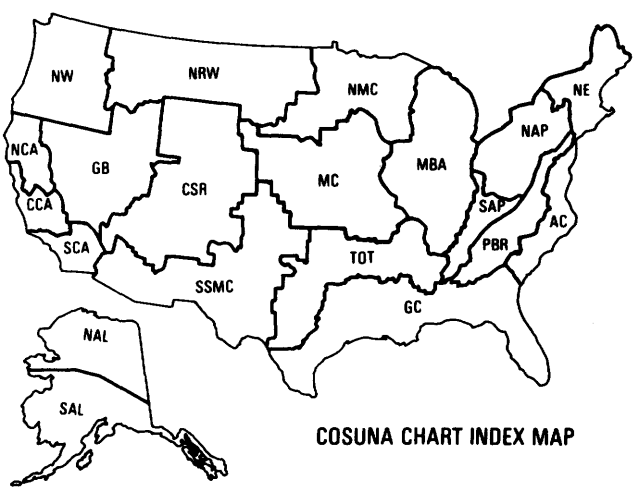


Figure 1. Index map of regions for the *Correlation of stratigraphic units of North America* (COSUNA) charts. See table 2 for region names and references.

Sheep Pass-Garrett Ranch(.) is now Sheep Pass-Garrett Ranch(!)(Poole and Claypool, 1984). These additions and revisions are footnoted on table 2.

Many of the petroleum systems of the "known" level of certainty are documented in the literature. In a known petroleum system, in the case of oil, a good geochemical match must exist between the source rock and the oil accumulations; or, in the case of natural gas, the gas is produced from a gas source rock. Of the 35 known systems, 25 are documented in the literature (table 3).

REFERENCES CITED

Adler, J.A., 1987, Mid-Continent region, *in* Lindberg, F.A., chart ed., Correlation of stratigraphic units of North America (COSUNA) project: American Association of Petroleum Geologists, 1 sheet.

Table 3. References where oil/source rock correlation demonstrate a known petroleum system

Petroleum system Source–reservoir(certainty)	Reference
Austin Chalk(!)	Hunt and McNichol, 1984
Bakken–Madison(!)	Dow, 1974; Williams, 1974
Chainman–Garrett Ranch(!)	Poole and Claypool, 1984
Cretaceous(!)	No reference
Cretaceous–Tertiary(!)	No reference
Desmoinesian–O sandstone(!)	Clayton, 1989
Devonian Black Shales–Venango(!)	No reference
Ellesmerian(!)	Seifert and others, 1980; Sedivy and others, 1987
Green River–Wasatch(!)	Tissot and others, 1978
Heath–Tyler(!)	Rinaldi, 1988
Hue–Sagavanirktok(!)	Anders and others, 1987 Anders and Magoon, 1985
Minnelusa(!)	Clayton and Ryder, 1984
Monterey–Puente(!)	No reference
Mowry–Muddy(!)	Momper and Williams, 1984
Niobrara(!)	Rice, 1984
Niobrara/Carlile–Frontier(!)	Momper and Williams, 1984
Ohio Shale(!)	No reference
Ozette–Hoh(!)	Kvenvolden and others, 1988
Pennsylvanian coals(!)	No reference
Pennsylvania–Late Paleozoic(!)	No reference
Phosphoria–Weber(!)	Momper and Williams, 1984
Point Pleasant–Clinton(!)	Cole and others, 1987
Salina A-1–Niagaran(!)	Gardner and Bray, 1984
Sheep Pass–Garrett Ranch(!)	Poole and Claypool, 1984
Simpson–Viola(!)	No reference
Smackover(!)	Claypool and Mancini, 1989; Oehler, 1984; Sassen, 1989
Sunbury–Berea(!)	Cole and others, 1987
Sunniland(!)	Palacas and others, 1984
Trenton(!)	Reed and others, 1986
Tyler(!)	Dow, 1974; Williams, 1974
Utica–Beekmantown(!)	No reference
Utica–Trenton(!)	No reference
Viola(!)	Jones and Philp, submitted
Winnipeg–Red River(!)	Dow, 1974; Williams, 1974
Woodford–Sycamore(!)	Jones and Philp, submitted

Anders, D.A., and Magoon, L.B., 1985, Oil-source correlation study in northeastern Alaska, *in* Leythaeuser, D., and Rullkötter, J., eds., Advances in organic geochemistry 1985: Organic Geochemistry, v. 10, p. 407–415.

Anders, D.A., Magoon, L.B., and Lubeck, S.C., 1987, Geochemistry of surface oil shows and potential source rocks, *in* Bird, K.J., and Magoon, L.B., eds., Petroleum geology of the northern part of the Arctic National Wildlife Refuge, northeastern Alaska: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1778, p. 181–198.

Ballard, W.W., Bluemle, J.P., and Gerhard, L.C., 1983, Northern Rockies/Willistion basin region, *in* Lindberg, F.A., chart ed., Correlation of stratigraphic units of North America (COSUNA) project: American Association of Petroleum Geologists, 1 sheet.

Bergstrom, D.J., and Morey, G.B., 1985, Northern Mid-Continent region, *in* Lindberg, F.A., chart ed., Correlation of stratigraphic units of North America (COSUNA) project: American Association of Petroleum Geologists, 1 sheet.

Bishop, C.C., and Davis, J.F., 1984a, Central California region, *in* Lindberg, F.A., chart ed., Correlation of stratigraphic units of North America (COSUNA) project: American Association of Petroleum Geologists, 1 sheet.

———1984b, Northern California region, *in* Lindberg, F.A., chart ed., Correlation of stratigraphic units of North America (COSUNA) project: American Association of Petroleum Geologists, 1 sheet.

———1984c, Southern California region, *in* Lindberg, F.A., chart ed., Correlation of stratigraphic units of North America (COSUNA) project: American Association of Petroleum Geologists, 1 sheet.

Braunstein, J., Huddleston, P., and Biel, R., 1988, Gulf Coast region, *in* Lindberg, F.A., chart ed., Correlation of stratigraphic units of North America (COSUNA) project: American Association of Petroleum Geologists, 1 sheet.

Claypool, G.E., and Mancini, E.A., 1989, Geochemical relationships of petroleum in Mesozoic reservoirs to carbonate source rocks of Jurassic Smackover Formation, southwest Alabama: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 73, no. 7, p. 904–924.

Clayton, J.L., 1989, Geochemical evidence for Paleozoic oil in Lower Cretaceous O sandstone, northern Denver basin: American Association of Petroleum Geologists, v. 73, no. 8, p. 977–988.

Clayton, J.L., and Ryder, R.T., 1984, Organic geochemistry of black shales and oils in the Minnelusa Formation (Permian and Pennsylvanian), Powder River basin, Wyoming, *in* Woodward, Jane, Meissner, F.F., and Clayton, J.L., eds., Hydrocarbon source rocks of the greater Rocky Mountain region: Denver, Rocky Mountain Association of Geologists, p. 231–253.

Cole, G.A., Drozd, R.J., Sedivy, R.A., and Halpern, H.I., 1987, Organic geochemistry and oil-source correlations, Paleozoic of Ohio: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 71, no. 7, p. 788–809.

Dow, W.G., 1974, Application of oil-correlation and source-rock data to exploration in Williston basin: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 58, p. 1253–1262.

Gardner, W.C., and Bray, E.E., 1984, Oils and source rocks of Niagaran Reefs (Silurian) in the Michigan basin, *in* Palacas, J.G., ed., Petroleum geochemistry and source rock potential of carbonate rocks: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Studies in Geology No. 18, p. 33–44.

Higgins, M., 1987, Piedmont/Blue Ridge region, *in* Lindberg, F.A., chart ed., Correlation of stratigraphic units of North America (COSUNA) project: American Association of Petroleum Geologists, 1 sheet.

Hills, J.M., and Kottlowski, F.E., 1983, Southwest/southwest Mid-Continent region, *in* Lindberg, F.A., chart ed., Correlation of stratigraphic units of North America (COSUNA) project: American Association of Petroleum Geologists, 1 sheet.

Hintze, L.F., 1985, Great Basin region, *in* Lindberg, F.A., chart ed., Correlation of stratigraphic units of North America (COSUNA) project: American Association of Petro leum Geologists, 1 sheet.

Hull, D.A., Armentrout, J.M., Hintze, L.F., Beaulieu, J., and Rau, W.W., 1988, Northwest region, *in* Lindberg, F.A., chart ed., Correlation of stratigraphic units of North America (COSUNA) project: American Association of Petroleum Geologists, 1 sheet.

Hunt, J.M., and McNichol, A.P., 1984, The Cretaceous Austin Chalk of south Texas—A petroleum source rock, *in* Palacas, J.G., ed., Petroleum geochemistry and source rock potential of carbonate rocks: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Studies in Geology No. 18, p. 117–125.

Jones, P.J., and Philp, R.P., in press, Oils and source rocks from Pauls Valley, Anadarko basin, Oklahoma: Applied Geochemistry, 48 p.

Jordan, R.R., and Smith, R.V., 1983, Atlantic Coastal plain, *in* Lindberg, F.A., chart ed., Correlation of stratigraphic units of North America (COSUNA) project: American Association of Petroleum Geologists, 1 sheet.

Kent, H.C., Couch, E.L., and Knepp, R.A., 1988, Central and Southern Rockies region, *in* Lindberg, F.A., chart ed., Correlation of stratigraphic units of North America (COSUNA) project: American Association of Petroleum Geologists, 1 sheet.

Kvenvolden, K.A., Rapp, J.B., and Hostettler, F.D., 1988, Preliminary evaluation of the petroleum potential of the Tertiary accretionary terrane, west side of the Olympic Peninsula, Washington: Comparison of molecular markers in oil and rock extract, part 2: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–75, p. 27–49.

Lillis, P.G., 1988, Correlation and characterization of oils using biological markers, Cuyama basin, California, *in* Bazeley, W.J.M., ed., Tertiary tectonics and sedimentation in the Cuyama Basin, San Luis Obispo, Santa Barbara, and Ventura Counties, California: Pacific Section Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists, v. 59, p. 39–48.

Magoon, L.B., ed., 1988a, Petroleum systems of the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1870, 68 p.

———1988b, The petroleum system—A classification scheme for research, exploration, and resource assessment, *in* Magoon, L.B., ed., Petroleum systems of the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1870, p. 2–15.

———in press, The geology of known oil and gas resources by petroleum system—Onshore Alaska, *in* Plafker, G., Jones, D., and Berg, H., eds., Alaska volume: Geological Society of America, Decade of North American Geology, 50 p.

Magoon, L.B., and Claypool, G.E., eds., 1985, Alaska North Slope oil/rock correlation study: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Special Studies in Geology 20, 678 p.

Mankin, C.J., 1987, Texas–Oklahoma tectonic region, *in* Lindberg, F.A., chart ed., Correlation of stratigraphic units of North America (COSUNA) project: American Association of Petroleum Geologists, 1 sheet.

Meyer, R.F., ed., 1974, AAPG–CSD Geological provinces code map: American Association of Petroleum Geologists, revised edition, 1 sheet, scale 1:5,000,000.

Momper, J.A., and Williams, J.A., 1984, Geochemical exploration of the Powder River basin, *in* Demaison, Gerard, and Murris, R.J., eds., Petroleum geochemistry and basin evaluation: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Memoir 35, p. 181–191.

Oehler, J.H., 1984, Carbonate source rocks in the Jurassic Smackover trend of Mississippi, Alabama, and Florida, *in* Palacas, J.G., ed., Petroleum geochemistry and source rock potential of carbonate rocks: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Studies in Geology No. 18, p. 63–69.

Palacas, J.G., Anders, D.E., and King, J.D., 1984, South Florida basin—A prime example of carbonate source rocks of petroleum, *in* Palacas, J.G., ed., Petroleum geochemistry and source rock potential of carbonate rocks: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Studies in Geology No. 18, p. 71–96.

Patchen, D.G., Avary, K.L., and Erwin, R.B., 1985a, Northern Appalachian region, *in* Lindberg, F.A., chart ed., Correlation of stratigraphic units of North America (COSUNA) project: American Association of Petroleum Geologists, 1 sheet.

———Southern Appalachian region, *in* Lindberg, F.A., chart ed., Correlation of stratigraphic units of North America (COSUNA) project: American Association of Petroleum Geologists, 1 sheet.

Poole, F.G., and Claypool, G.E., 1984, Petroleum source-rock potential and crude-oil correlation in the Great Basin, *in* Woodward, Jane, Meissner, F.F., and Clayton, J.L., eds., Hydrocarbon source rocks of the greater Rocky Mountain Region: Denver, Rocky Mountain Association of Geologists, p. 179–229.

Reed, J.D., Illich, H.A., and Horsfield, B., 1986, Biochemical evolutionary significance of Ordovician oils and their sources, *in* Leythaeuser D., and Rullkötter, J., eds., Advances in organic geochemistry: Organic Geochemistry, v. 10, p. 347–358.

Rice, D.D., 1984, Occurrence of indigenous biogenic gas in organic-rich, immature chalks of Late Cretaceous age, eastern Denver basin, *in* Palacas, J.G., ed., Petroleum geochemistry and source rock potential of carbonate rocks: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Studies in Geology No. 18, p. 135–150.

Rinaldi, G.G., 1988, Oil–source studies in central Montana: Correlations and migration implications, *in* Mattavelli, L, and Novelli, L., eds., Advances in organic geochemistry 1987: Organic Geochemistry, v. 13, no. 1–3, p. 373–376.

Sassen, Roger, 1989, Migration of crude oil from the Smackover source rock to Jurassic and Cretaceous reservoirs of the northern Gulf Rim: Organic Geochemistry, v. 14, no. 1, p. 51–60.

Schaff, R.G., and Gilbert, W.G., 1987a, Northern Alaska region, *in* Lindberg, F.A., chart ed., Correlation of stratigraphic units of North America (COSUNA) project: American Association of Petroleum Geologists, 1 sheet.

———1987b, Southern Alaska region, *in* Lindberg, F.A., chart ed., Correlation of stratigraphic units of North America (COSUNA) project: American Association of Petro-

leum Geologists, 1 sheet.
Sedivy, R.A., Penfield, I.E., Halpern, H.I., Drozd, R.J., Cole, G.A., and Burwood, R., 1987, Investigation of source rock–crude oil relationships in the northern Alaska hydrocarbon habitat, *in* Tailleur, I.L., and Weimer, Paul, eds., Alaskan North Slope geology: Bakersfield, Calif., Pacific Section, Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists and Alaska Geological Society, v. 1, p. 169–179.
Seifert, W.K., Moldowan, J.M., and Jones, R.W., 1980, Application of biological marker chemistry to petroleum exploration: Proceedings 10th World Petroleum Congress, v. 2, p. 425–438.
Shaver, R.H., 1985, Midwestern basin and arches region, *in* Lindberg, F.A., chart ed., Correlation of stratigraphic units of North America (COSUNA) project: American Association of Petroleum Geologists, 1 sheet.
Skehan, S.J., 1985, New England region, *in* Lindberg, F.A., chart ed., Correlation of stratigraphic units of North America (COSUNA) project: American Association of Petroleum Geologists, 1 sheet.
Tissot, B., Deroo, G., and Hood, A., 1978, Geochemical study of the Uinta basin: Formation of petroleum from the Green River Formation: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 42, no. 10, p. 1469–1485.
Tissot, B.P., and Welte, D.H., 1984, Petroleum formation and occurrence: New York, Springer-Verlag, 699 p.
Williams, J.A., 1974, Characterization of oil types in Williston basin: American Association of Petroleum Geologists, v. 58, no. 7, p. 1243–1252.

The Value of Stratigraphic Cross Sections

By Cornelius M. Molenaar[1]

INTRODUCTION

In recent years, the great proliferation of geologic literature has made it ever more time consuming for geologists to keep up with the latest concepts and developments, even in only one geologic specialty. Many geologists may only read an abstract of a report and briefly review the figures. For this reason, it is important that authors carefully prepare their illustrations to show as clearly as possible the concepts or details they are trying to convey. The old adage that "one picture is worth a thousand words" could never be truer, especially when many readers never thoroughly read a paper. This report is a brief discussion on the value of one type of illustration, the stratigraphic cross section, which is an excellent method of graphically showing vertical and lateral lithostratigraphic relations.

Some cross sections are schematic (cartoons) and are intended to show only overall relations without regard to scale, precise location, and actual details. Others are constructed using "hard" data, such as data from boreholes or measured sections. This latter type takes more time and effort to construct, but shows the basic data to support the interpretations. The following discussion relates to these data-based stratigraphic sections.

DATA, AND SIZE AND SCALE OF ILLUSTRATION

Data used in constructing stratigraphic cross sections are usually derived from measured outcrop sections or geophysical logs of boreholes. The combination of data from outcrop sections and borehole logs adds immeasurably to detailed stratigraphic studies. If the quality of outcrops is good, surface sections are much better than borehole logs for interpreting details of lithology, contact relations, bedding features, and depositional environments. Conversely, borehole logs are generally much better for measuring thicknesses, correlating marker beds in shale sections, and showing lateral relations of subjacent lithologic units. Thus the two types of data complement each other.

Depending on the scale and size of the illustration (that is, page size or large plate size) measured outcrop sections or borehole logs can be used to show the graphic data, or vertical lines ("stick" sections) can be substituted for the data when space or size is limited. Whichever type is used, it is important to plan the layout carefully to make maximum use of the available space. If more than one cross section is planned to show relations across different parts of the basin or area of interest, the same vertical scale should be used, if feasible, to aid direct comparisons of the different sections. When constructing a line of section through numerous control points, such as borehole logs or outcrop sections, positioning the control points relative to their actual horizontal separation is helpful in order to best show rates of change of lithologic units or rates of convergence or divergence. This positioning is a simple matter if vertical stick sections are used for each control point. But if the actual borehole logs or graphic columnar outcrop sections are used, allow for the addition of an average width of the borehole logs or columnar sections in addition to the distance between control points.

The choice of vertical and horizontal scales depends on the size of the illustration and the purpose of the cross section. If a regional overview is the objective, a section must be prepared at a small scale, but details will be somewhat generalized. Larger scales should be used to show stratigraphic details of a specific lithologic unit. A cross section in Molenaar and others (1986) is an example of a small-scale stratigraphic cross section. This section shows a 355-mi (570 km)-long subsurface section across the North Slope of Alaska using gamma-ray and resistivity logs of 18 boreholes at a vertical scale of 1:24,000 and horizontal scale of approximately 1:870,000 (1 in.= 14 mi or 1 cm= 8.7 km). Vertical exaggeration is about 36X. Even at this scale, the log character substantiates most of the correlations shown. Plate-size cross sections in Hook and others (1983) are examples of moderate-scale cross sections. Two sections show correlations of numerous measured outcrop sections of approximately 1,000 ft (300 m) of middle Cretaceous rocks in west-central New Mexico. The vertical scale is about 1:1,900 (the unusual scales are due to photographic reduction of the work sections) and the vertical exaggerations are about 146 and 256X. At this scale, the lithologic details that are shown support the correlations of rock units. In addition, numerous molluscan fossils are listed where they occur on the sections. The detailed

[1]U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.

sections in Hook and others (1983) are also shown as less detailed page-size figures in which vertical lines (sticks) are substituted for the actual measured section. Supplemental page-size figures permit the reader to visualize the overall relations; the larger plates can be unfolded if the reader wants to inspect the details.

DATUMS

Choosing a datum is also an important consideration in constructing cross sections. Again, it depends on the features the author wants to show. To illustrate the stratigraphic details of a particular formation, it is best to use a horizontal datum a short distance above the formation. In some cases, using a datum below the formation of interest, even though correctly correlated, can make lateral relations appear quite different, especially if the section thickens or a stratigraphic rise occurs between control points. On some cross sections a variable datum is appropriate, such as a section where the control in one part of the section does not include higher (or lower) parts of the stratigraphic interval included in other parts of the cross section. On cross sections showing numerous correlated marker beds, a specific datum is not actually necessary.

Using sea level or an elevation above or below sea level as a datum will show formations at their present structural positions. Showing structure between control points is inadvisable unless it is desirable to show the projected formations at their low point in a basin or their high point on a structural high. But trying to show details of folding and faulting (unless they are syndepositional) and still show details of stratigraphy is difficult because the vertical scale necessary for detailed stratigraphic sections is vastly different from an appropriate scale for structure cross sections.

Commonly, an unconformity or the base of a marine transgression is used as a datum. Both of these surfaces are usually essentially flat surfaces prior to deposition of overlying strata. Their use as a datum illustrates the post-truncation relations of underlying strata. In some cases, however, unconformities can have significant relief. Such surfaces should be avoided for use as flat datums.

USE OF TIME MARKER BEDS

In constructing a stratigraphic cross section, the correlation of many marker beds (time lines) both above and below the rock unit of interest provides a time-bounded framework that greatly aids in illustrating and understanding the depositional architecture. Usually there are many correlatable marker beds in marine shale sequences, such as the Upper Cretaceous Mancos Shale or equivalents in the Western Interior seaway, that can be recognized on geophysical logs of boreholes, especially on the conductivity log. Recognition of marker beds is facilitated by lithologic changes within marine shales. Some of these changes can be quite subtle. Bentonite beds and sandstone-shale contacts are examples of obvious changes. The subtle changes, which also are very reliable for long-distance correlations, are due to changes in content of carbonate, intermixed bentonite, and silt or sand within the shale section and possibly differences in clay mineralogy. All such lithologic variations are expressed by variations on resistivity or conductivity logs. Some markers are recognized as solitary deflections or spikes on the log. Others are recognizable resistivity or conductivity patterns over an interval of as much as 100 ft (30 m).

CONCLUSION

Detailed stratigraphic cross sections, using correlated time marker beds as well as lithologic units and a carefully selected datum (or datums), show not only the correlations of lithologic units, but how they correlate with respect to time lines. The large vertical exaggeration used in constructing most stratigraphic cross sections permits recognition and measurement of subtle depositional and paleostructural features, such as (1) diachronism and stratigraphic rising (relative sea-level rise) of shoreface sandstone bodies, (2) shelf to slope to basinal topography, if developed, in thick marine shale sequences, (3) low-amplitude paleostructural features, and (4) differential compaction features associated with lateral heterogeneities in sand-shale sections. The plates in Molenaar and Baird (1989) show examples of subsurface correlations across the northern part of the San Juan basin in southwest Colorado using time marker beds to illustrate some of the above-listed features.

In summary, properly constructed stratigraphic cross sections are an excellent method for depicting obvious and subtle stratigraphic features. Unlike maps that show isopachs of specific intervals (either time bounded or facies bounded), isoliths, or generalized lithofacies distribution patterns, stratigraphic sections show how the rocks fit together, and meaningful stratigraphic sequences in the order that they were deposited. Moreover, by annotation, much additional data can be shown on the cross sections, such as geochemical, paleontologic, petrologic, and hydrocarbon test or completion data.

REFERENCES CITED

Hook, S.C., Molenaar, C.M., and Cobban, W.A., 1983, Stratigraphy and revision of nomenclature of upper Cenoman-

ian to Turonian (Upper Cretaceous) rocks of west-central New Mexico, *in* Hook, S.C., compiler, Contributions to mid-Cretaceous paleontology and stratigraphy of New Mexico—Part II: New Mexico Bureau of Mines and Mineral Resources Circular 185, p. 7–28.

Molenaar, C.M., and Baird, J.K., 1989, North-south stratigraphic cross sections of Upper Cretaceous rocks, northern San Juan Basin, southwestern Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Miscellaneous Field Study Map MF-2068.

Molenaar, C.M., Bird, K.J., and Collett, T.S., 1986, Regional correlation sections across the North Slope of Alaska: U.S. Geological Survey Miscellaneous Field Studies Map MF-1907.

Carbonate Aprons—Their Petroleum Reservoir Potential

By Harry E. Cook[1] *and* Henry T. Mullins[2]

INTRODUCTION

Occurrence of Allochthonous Carbonate Debris

Sediment gravity-flow deposition along the deep-water flanks of carbonate platforms typically does not produce submarine fans. Instead, wedge-shaped *carbonate aprons* develop parallel to the adjacent shelf-slope break (Schlager and Chermak, 1979; Crevello and Schlager, 1980; Cook, 1983a; Mullins, 1983, 1986; Mullins and Cook, 1986; Sarg, 1988). The major difference between submarine fans and carbonate aprons is a point source with channelized sedimentation on fans, versus a line source with sheet-flow sedimentation on aprons.

Modern and ancient siliciclastic deposits formed by sediment gravity flows have been reported from a wide variety of geologic settings throughout the geologic record (for example, Nelson and others, 1970; Cook and others, 1982; Howell and Normark, 1982; Walker, 1984; Bouma and others, 1985; Shanmugam and Moiola, 1988). Likewise, since the late 1960's it has been known that carbonate mass-transport deposits occur virtually throughout the Phanerozoic in widely diverse tectonic and stratigraphic settings (for example, Thomson and Thomasson, 1969; Cook and others, 1972; Mountjoy and others, 1972; Wilson, 1975; Cook and Enos, 1977; Cook, 1979; Mullins and Neumann, 1979; Cook and others, 1983; Cook and Mullins, 1983; Crevello and Harris, 1985; Bourrouilh and Doyle, 1987; Cook and others, 1989a). It is normal to find allochthonous carbonate sediments in carbonate slope, base-of-slope, and basin-plain sequences (Cook and Mullins, 1983), regardless of the type of carbonate platform (Read, 1982) or the type of carbonate slope margin (Mullins, 1978; Cook, 1983a; James and Mountjoy, 1983; McIlreath and James, 1984).

INTERPRETATION AND SIGNIFICANCE

Early studies tended to interpret carbonate petroleum reservoirs consisting of coarse-grained carbonate sandstones and conglomerates as representing shoal-water carbonate facies (for example, Barnetche and Illing, 1956). Later studies, however, showed that some of these facies had been misinterpreted and that the reservoirs actually consisted of allochthonous carbonate sediments, the constituents of which had been transported tens of kilometers from bank and reef margins by turbidity currents and debris flows (for example, Viniegra and Castillo-Tejero, 1970; Cook and others, 1972; Cook, 1983b; Enos, 1977). Even so, industry did not begin to actively explore for deep-water carbonate turbidite or debris-flow reservoirs until the early 1980's. Furthermore, outcrop studies of allochthonous carbonate debris did not focus on their reservoir potential but rather on their uses: (1) for signaling the existence of carbonate buildups or reefs in an area, (2) as proximity indicators for locating potential petroleum reservoirs in shoal-water carbonate environments, (3) for correlation in the basin facies, and (4) for genetic interpretation of the morphologic development and diagenesis of carbonate complexes (Cook and others, 1972; Mountjoy and others, 1972).

CARBONATE APRON MODELS

Background

The submarine fan model (Nelson and others, 1970; Mutti and Ricci Lucchi, 1978; Normark, 1978; Walker, 1978), as well as its variations (Bouma and others, 1985; Shanmugam and Moiola, 1988), is well established in the geologic literature and is widely used both for paleoenvironmental interpretations of coarse-grained, deep-sea facies and as a predictive tool in the exploration for petroleum from deep-water reservoirs. Although the model has had considerable success in application to siliciclastic facies, studies of both modern carbonate mass-transport sequences (Mullins, 1978, 1983, 1986; Mullins and Neumann, 1979; Schlager and Chermak, 1979; Crevello and Schlager, 1980; Mullins and others, 1984) and ancient ones (Koss, 1977; Biddle, 1979; Kepper, 1981; Jordan, 1981; Cook, 1982, 1983a) have clearly demonstrated that the submarine-fan model cannot be applied unequivocally to carbonate-sediment gravity-flow deposits. Instead of orderly stratigraphic sequences of outer, middle, and inner fan facies that originate from a point source, many ancient carbonate mass-transport deposits consist of a seemingly random

[1]U.S. Geological Survey, Menlo Park, Calif.
[2]Department of Geology, Syracuse University, Syracuse, N.Y.

distribution of debris that has more affinity with the debris-sheet model (Cook and others, 1972) and apron model (Cook, 1983a; Mullins and Cook, 1986). In fact, documented examples of ancient carbonate submarine fans with recognizable fan facies are quite rare (for example, Cook and Egbert, 1981; Cook, 1983b; Ruiz-Ortiz, 1983; Wright and Wilson, 1984; Watts, 1985, 1986; Cook and others, 1989a,b), and to date no complete modern examples have been discovered (Mullins and Cook, 1986). Despite this, numerous papers in the literature have indiscriminately used the term "fan" or "submarine fan" in their discussion of carbonate mass-flow facies sequences without presenting evidence that documents the existence of distinct fan facies associations. Unlike aprons, submarine fans develop at the mouth of large submarine canyons by mass-flow processes that are typically well channelized. Thus, one basic criterion that distinguishes fans from aprons is the high percentage of channelized facies in fans versus the dominance of non-channelized sheet-flow facies in aprons (Mullins and Cook, 1986).

In the rock record, two distinct types of carbonate aprons have been recognized (Cook, 1983a; Mullins and Cook, 1986) the *slope apron* and *base-of-slope apron* (fig. 2). The major difference between the two models is that the base-of-slope model involves an upper-slope bypass zone, whereas in the slope apron model, redeposited carbonates extend up to the shelf edge without an intervening bypass slope.

Slope Apron

Slope aprons are most abundant along carbonate platform margins that have a relatively gentle gradient (less than 4 degrees) into the adjacent basin, such as the Upper Devonian Ancient Wall and Miette carbonate banks in Alberta, Canada, as well as the Upper Silurian to Lower Devonian of central Nevada (Cook, 1983a; Cook and Taylor, 1987). In the slope-apron model, carbonate gravity flow deposits extend up to the adjacent shelf-slope break without an upper slope bypass zone. Turbidity current and debris-flow deposits are abundant in slope aprons, but they do not develop systematic vertical cycles (fig. 2). Carbonate slope aprons have yet to be identified in modern environments, even those platform margins with slopes of less than 4 degrees (Mullins and Cook, 1986). The reason for this is not clear although it may be due to the fact that modern platforms tend to have relatively high relief. Future studies of upper slopes in modern environments may reveal the presence of slope aprons.

Base-of-Slope Carbonate Apron

Base-of-slope apron sediments (fig. 2) bypass upper slopes via numerous small gullies and canyons, as well as by sheet-flow events. This kind of carbonate apron develops along relatively steep (greater than 4 degrees) high-relief platform margins, such as those in parts of the Upper Devonian and Lower Mississippian of the Great Basin or the Permian of west Texas (Cook, 1983a, b; Cook and Taylor, 1987), and the Carboniferous of east-central Alaska (Cook and others, 1987). These examples exhibit thickening-upward cycles (fig. 2). The relatively steep bypass slopes commonly have numerous submarine slides and slumps; this is in contrast to carbonate slope aprons, which are rarely associated with submarine slides and slumps.

In the northern Bahamas, well-developed modern base-of-slope carbonate aprons have been described from the Little Bahama Bank (Mullins, 1985; Mullins and others, 1984), southern Tongue of the Ocean (Schlager and Chermak, 1979), and Exuma Sound (Crevello and Schlager, 1980; Austin and others, 1986, 1988).

PETROLEUM EXPLORATION FOR CARBONATE APRONS

Deep-water, carbonate sediment-gravity-flow deposits are now recognized as very important and attractive reservoirs for petroleum (Cook and Enos, 1977; Scholle, 1977; Mullins and Cook, 1986). A good example of extensive petroleum production from an ancient base-of-slope carbonate apron is the Cretaceous Tamabra Limestone of Mexico, where production and proven reserves exceed 2.3 billion barrels of oil (Enos, 1977, 1985; Enos and Moore, 1983). Production is mainly from solution porosity in grainstone-packstone sediment gravity flow facies that are encased in fine-grained, deep-water deposits (Enos, 1977, 1985).

Numerous giant oil fields also have been recently discovered in the "Great Carbonate Bank of Yucatan" of southern Mexico and offshore Campeche, which has been considered to be a major world petroleum province (Meyerhoff, 1980; Viniegra, 1981). One of the largest fields is a stratigraphic trap, where detrital calcarenites wedge out into finer grained facies (Viniegra, 1981), in a fashion possibly similar to the idealized base-of-slope carbonate apron. As of 1979, proven reserves for this petroleum province exceeded 18 billion barrels of oil and 15 trillion cubic feet of gas (Meyerhoff, 1980; Viniegra, 1981).

More recent petroleum discoveries in the southeast area of Mexico's Reforma-Jalpa were reported by Aguayo and others (1985). There, Upper Jurassic and Lower Cretaceous carbonate petroleum reservoirs occur in platform and slope environments. The basin and carbonate platform are separated by a slope 20 km wide. Carbonate slope sediments are described as being formed of "breccia beds interlayered and interfingered with pelagic horizons" (Aguayo and others, 1985). Pro-

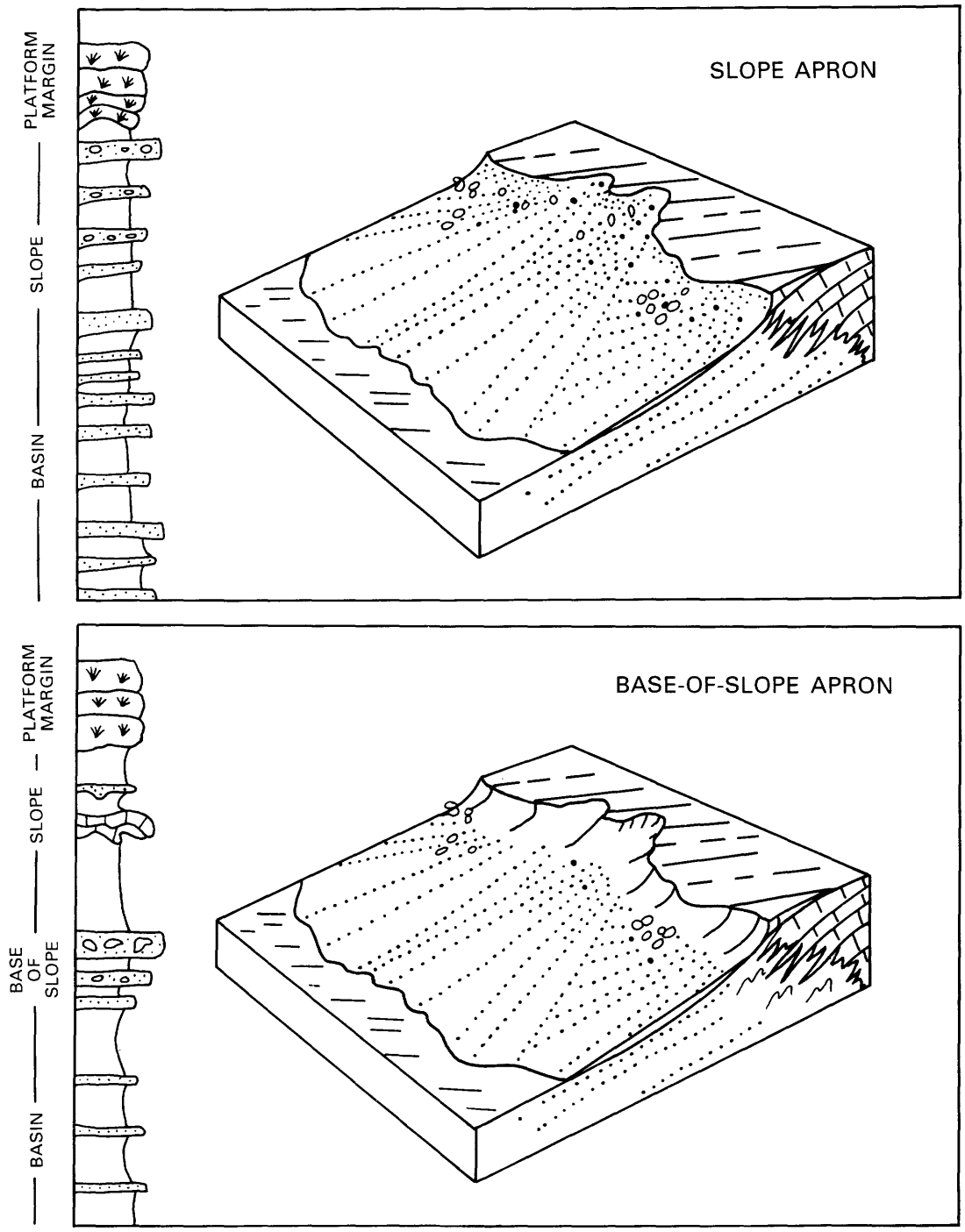


Figure 2. Schematic, three-dimensional block-diagram models for carbonate slope apron and base-of-slope apron. Along left-hand margins are highly generalized seaward-prograding stratigraphic sequences that one might expect to find associated with these apron models. From Cook (1983a) and Mullins and Cook (1986).

duction occurs in these slope breccias starting from about 5 to about 12 km seaward of the platform margin. As of 1985, production occurred for a distance of 15 km laterally along the slope (Aguayo and others, 1985, fig. 7).

Petroleum reserves also occur in Permian deep-water carbonate gravity-flow facies along slope and base-of-slope settings in the Delaware and Midland basins of west Texas (Cook, 1983a,b; Mazzullo, 1984; Hobson and others, 1985a,b). We do not know whether these reservoirs represent debris sheets, fans, carbonate aprons, or some combination of all three models (Cook, 1983a,b; Mazzullo, 1984; Hobson and others, 1985a,b). Probably allochthonous carbonate deposits extend around much of the Permian platform margin in the Midland basin (Mazzullo, oral communication, 1983; Mazzullo, 1984; Mazzullo and Reid, 1987). Oil fields in these Permian carbonate rocks occur 15 to 30 km seaward from platform margins, extend basinward for distances up to 25 km, and are about 40 km long parallel to the slope (Cook, 1983b). Production occurs from megabreccias, grain-supported conglomerates, and pebbly calcarenites. Much of the porosity is secondary, resulting from post-depositional dissolution of unstable aragonite and magnesian calcite constituents. Fracture porosity and intercrystalline dolomitic porosity are also important. Downslope transport probably involved a variety of mechanisms including submarine slides, debris flows, and turbidity-current flows. Many of the boulder-bearing megabreccia debris flows may have originated as platform-margin-generated slides. The transition from sliding to debris flow to turbidity-current flow is a subject studied by Hampton (1972) in laboratory experiments and for subaerial mass-transport deposits, by Field and Clarke (1979) on modern siliciclastic slopes, and by Cook (1979) on ancient carbonate slopes.

In the Pennsylvanian Palo Duro basin, Crevello and others (1985) described allochthonous sediment gravity-flow carbonate rocks that occur in slope and basinal settings. One well produced nearly 4,000 barrels of oil before abandonment. Although not a commercial success, the discovery, as Crevello and others (1985) pointed out, is important as it documents the first occurrence of oil production from slope and basinal carbonate debris in the Palo Duro basin. The nearest oil production is 80 km to the south in platform-margin carbonate rocks (Crevello and others, 1985).

New potential exploration targets exist in a frontier area of east-central Alaska where a 500-m-thick sequence of Carboniferous carbonate base-of-slope apron and (or) submarine fan-lobe facies are spectacularly exposed (Cook, Magoon, and others, 1987). The organic content of the lime mudstones interbedded with the allochthonous carbonate rocks averages 5 weight percent, TAI, and T_{max} indicates that the organic matter is well into oil generation but not overmature. S_2/S_3 ratios suggest that the carbonate rocks contain mixed gas-and-oil-prone source rocks. Such source rock data document the potential of the apron or fan facies as subsurface petroleum reservoirs.

As exploration continues into deeper water carbonate slope and basinal settings, more reservoirs of the above types probably will be sought and found. It will be increasingly important to understand the nature, facies associations, and geologic controls responsible for the origin of these potential carbonate reservoirs. For example, a topic of active research involves the interrelations between carbonate platform margin collapse, eustatic sea-level lowering, and rapid sediment accumulation rates at platform margins (Mullins and others, 1986; Cook and Taylor, 1987; Cook, Taylor, and Magoon, 1987; Field and Gardner, 1987; Sarg, 1988; Cook and others, 1989a,b; Mullins and Hine, 1989).

Many of these coarse-grained, redeposited facies also have a high diagenetic potential that can enhance their reservoir quality within the deep marine diagenetic realm, particularly during shallow burial (Mullins and others, 1985; Dit and Mullins, 1988). Thus it becomes important to understand under what conditions unstable carbonate minerals may constitute these redeposited sequences. There are two principal types of redeposited carbonate particles: those that are platform derived and contain an abundance of metastable aragonite and magnesian calcite, and those that are slope derived and consist mainly of stable calcite. In terms of porosity enhancement by postdepositional solution, the former would have greater promise as petroleum reservoirs. Thus, an exploration strategy that seeks mineralogically unstable carbonate gravity-flow facies is likely to have a higher rate of success. Such an exploration strategy might use the following perspectives: along windward margins of carbonate platforms, on-bank transport of coarse sediment dominates, whereas along leeward margins coarse carbonate sediments are actively transported off-bank onto adjacent slopes (Hine and Mullins, 1983). Accordingly, carbonate-sediment gravity-flow facies along leeward margins are more likely to have a higher percentage of redeposited unstable aragonite and magnesian calcite and are more likely to undergo porosity enhancement by the dissolution of unstable grains (Mullins and Cook, 1986). This concept appears to be applicable to the Cretaceous Poza Rica trend, which Paul Enos (oral communication, 1985) has interpreted as a leeward margin.

REFERENCES CITED

Aguayo C.J.A., Basanez L.M.A., Bello M.R., Pimienta L.M., and Sosa P.A., 1985, Tectonic evolution and carbonate sedimentary environments during the Mesozoic at Reforma-Jalpa area, southeast Mexico, *in* Crevello, P.D., and Harris, P.M., eds., Deep-water carbonates—A core

workshop: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Core Workshop No. 6, p. 249–265.

Austin, J.A., Jr., Schlager, W., Palmer, A.A., and others, 1986, Proceedings Initial Reports, Part A, Ocean Drilling Program Leg 101: College Station, Texas A & M University, 569 p.

Austin, J.A., Jr., Schlager, W., and others, 1988, Proceedings Ocean Drilling Program, Scientific Results, Leg 101: College Station, Texas A & M University, 501 p.

Barnetche, A., and Illing, L.V., 1956, The Tamabra Limestone of the Poza Rica oilfield, Veracruz, Mexico: 20th International Geological Congress, Mexico, D.F., 38 p.

Biddle, K.T., 1979, Characteristics of Triassic carbonate buildups of the Dolomite Alps, Italy: Evidence from the margin-to-basin depositional system: Houston, Rice University, Ph.D. thesis, 212 p.

Bouma, A.H., Normark, W.R., and Barnes, N.E. eds., 1985, Submarine fans and related turbidite systems: New York, Springer-Verlag, 351 p.

Bourrouilh, R., and Doyle, L.J., eds., 1987, Carbonate gravity deposits: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Research Conference, Ainhoa, France, Proceedings, 36 p.

Cook, H.E., 1979, Ancient continental slope sequences and their value in understanding modern slope development, *in* Doyle, L.J., and Pilkey, O.H., eds., Geology of continental slopes: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Special Publication 25, p. 287–306.

———1982, Carbonate submarine fans versus carbonate debris aprons: Facies patterns, depositional processes, and models [abs.]: Geological Society of America Abstracts with Program, v. 14, no. 7, p. 466–467.

———1983a, Ancient carbonate platform margins, slopes, and basins, *in* Cook, H.E., Hine, A.C., and Mullins, H.T., eds., Platform margins and deep-water carbonates: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Short Course 12, p. 5–1–5–189.

———1983b, Sedimentology of some allochthonous deep-water carbonate reservoirs, Lower Permian, west Texas: Carbonate debris sheets, aprons, or submarine fans? [abs.]: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 67, no. 3, p. 442.

Cook, H.E., and Egbert, R.M., 1981, Carbonate submarine fan facies along a Paleozoic prograding continental margin, western United States [abs.]: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 65, no. 5, p. 913.

Cook, H.E., and Enos, P., 1977, eds., Deep-water carbonate environments: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Special Publication 25, 336 p.

Cook, H.E., Field, M.E., and Gardner, J.V., 1982, Characteristics of sediment on modern and ancient continental slopes, *in* Scholle, P.A., and Spearing, D., eds., Sandstone depositional environments: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Memoir 31, p. 329–364.

Cook, H.E., Hine, A.C., and Mullins, H.T., 1983, Platform margin and deep-water carbonates: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Short Course 12, 573 p.

Cook, H.E., Magoon, L.B., Stanley, R.G., and Casas, A., 1987, Carbonate submarine fans and aprons in a frontier petroleum region, Carboniferous Calico Bluffs Formation of east-central Alaska [abs.]: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 71, no. 5, p. 542.

Cook, H.E., McDaniel, P.N., Mountjoy, E.W., and Pray, L.C., 1972, Allochthonous carbonate debris flows at Devonian bank ("reef") margins, Alberta, Canada: Canadian Petroleum Geology Bulletin, v. 20, no. 3, p. 439–497.

Cook, H.E., and Mullins, H.T., 1983, Basin margin environment, *in* Scholle, P.A., Bebout, D.G., and Moore, C.H., eds., Carbonate depositional environments: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Memoir 33, p. 539–617.

Cook, H.E., and Taylor, M.E., 1987, Stages in the evolution of Paleozoic carbonate platform and basin margin types: Western United States passive continental margin [abs.]: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 71, no. 4, p. 542–543.

Cook, H.E., Taylor, M.E., and Magoon, L.B., 1987, The role of major carbonate debris-flow events in recognizing and dating eustatic lowering of sea level—Perspectives from pre-Panthalassa ocean-margin terranes, *in* Bourrouilh, R., and Doyle, L.J., eds., Carbonate gravity deposits: Society of Paleontologists and Economic Mineralogists Research Conference, Ainhoa, France, Proceedings, p. 7–8.

Cook, H.E., Taylor, M.E., and Miller, J.F., 1989a, Late Cambrian and Early Ordovician stratigraphy, biostratigraphy, and depositional environments, Hot Creek Range, Nevada, *in* Taylor, M.E., ed., Cambrian and Early Ordovician Stratigraphy and Paleontology of the Basin and Range Province, Western United States, 28th International Geological Congress, Field Trip Guidebook T125, p. 28–44.

Cook, H.E., Taylor, M.E., Zhemchuzhnikov, V.G., Apollonov, M.K., Ergaliev, G.Kh., Dubinina, S.V., Melnikova, L.M., Sargaskaev, Z.S., and Zakharov, A.V., 1989b, Evolution of an early Paleozoic Carbonate seamount, Malyi Karatau Range, southern Kazakhstan, USSR: New evidence for the early history of Kazakhstania [abs.]: 28th International Geological Congress Abstracts, v. 1, p. 1–322–1–323.

Crevello, P.D., Clymer, P.L., and Brinton, L., 1985, Pennslyvanian carbonate slope and basin deposition, Palo Duro Basin, *in* Crevello, P.D., and Harris, P.M., eds., Deep-water carbonates—A core workshop: Society of Paleontologists and Mineralogists Core Workshop, p. 27–55.

Crevello, P.D., and Harris, P.M., eds., 1985, Deep-water carbonates—A core workshop: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Core Workshop 6, 527 p.

Crevello, P.D., and Schlager, W., 1980, Carbonate debris sheets and turbidites, Exuma Sound, Bahamas: Journal of Sedimentary Petrology, v. 50, no. 4, p. 1121–1148.

Dix, G.R., and Mullins, H.T., 1988, Rapid burial diagenesis of deep-water carbonates: Exuma Sound, Bahamas: Geology, v. 16, p. 680–683.

Enos, P., 1977, Tamabra Limestone of the Poza Rica trend, Cretaceous, Mexico, *in* Cook, H.E., and Enos, P., eds., Deep water carbonate environments: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Special Publication 25, p. 273–314.

———1985, Cretaceous debris reservoirs, Poza Rica field, Veracruz, Mexico, *in* Roehl, P.O., and Choquette, P.W.,

eds., Carbonate petroleum reservoirs: Berlin, Springer, p. 455–469.

Enos, P., and Moore, C.H., 1983, Fore-reef slope, *in* Scholle, P.A., Bebout, D.G., and Moore, C.H., eds., Carbonate depositional environments: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Memoir 33, p. 507–537.

Field, M.E., and Clarke, S.H., Jr., 1979, Small-scale slumps and slides and their significance for basin slope processes, southern California borderland, *in* Doyle, L.J., and Pilkey, O.H., eds., Geology of continental slopes: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Special Publication 27, p. 223–230.

Field, M.E., and Gardner, J.V., 1987, Submarine slides and flows on the margins of N.E. Spain and California: Implications for carbonate margins, *in* Bourrouilh, R., and Doyle, L.J., eds., Carbonate gravity deposits: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Research Conference, Ainhoa, France, Proceedings, p. 17–18.

Hampton, M.A., 1972, The role of subaqueous debris flow in generating turbidity currents: Journal of Sedimentary Petrology, v. 42, no. 4, p. 775–793.

Hine, A.C., and Mullins, H.T., 1983, Modern carbonate shelf-slope breaks, *in* Stanley, D.J., and Moore, G.T., eds., The shelfbreak: Critical interface on continental margins: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Special Publication 33, p. 169–188.

Hobson, J.P., Caldwell, C.D., and Toomey, D.F., 1985a, Early Permian deep-water allochthonous limestone facies and reservoir, west Texas: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 69, no. 12, p. 2130–2147.

———1985b, Sedimentary facies and biota of Early Permian deep-water allochthonous limestone, southeast Reagan County, Texas, *in* Crevello, P.D., and Harris, P.M., eds., Deep-water carbonates—A core workshop: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Core Workshop 6, p. 93–139.

Howell, D.G., and Normark, W.R., 1982, Sedimentology of submarine fans, *in* Scholle, P.A., and Spearing, D., eds., Sandstone depositional environments: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Memoir 31, p. 361–404.

James, N.P., and Mountjoy, E.W., 1983, Shelf-slope break in fossil carbonate platforms: An overview, *in* Stanley, D.J., and Moore, G.T., eds., The shelfbreak: Critical interface on continental margins: Society of Paleontologists and Mineralogists Special Publication 33, p. 189–206.

Jordan, T.E., 1981, Enigmatic deep-water redepositional mechanisms, upper part of Oquirrh Group, Utah: Journal of Sedimentary Petrology, v. 51, no. 3, p. 879–894.

Kepper, J.C., 1981, Sedimentology of a Middle Cambrian outer shelf margin with evidence for syndepositional faulting, eastern California and western Nevada: Journal of Sedimentary Petrology, v. 51, no. 3, p. 807–821.

Koss, G.M., 1977, Carbonate mass flow sequences of the Permian Delaware Basin, west Texas: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists, Permian Basin Section Field Conference Guidebook, 77–16, p. 391–408.

Mazzullo, S.J., 1984, Foreshelf carbonate facies mosaics, Permian, Midland Basin, Texas [abs.]: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists 1st Annual Midyear Meeting, v. 1, p. 52.

Mazzullo, S.J., and Reid, A.M., 1987, Contrasting evolutionary patterns of Lower Permian shelf and basinal facies, Midland Basin, Texas [abs.]: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 71, no. 5, p. 590–591.

McIlreath, I.A., and James, N.P., 1984, Carbonate slopes, *in* Walker, R.G., ed., Facies models: Geoscience Canada Reprint Series 1, p. 245–257.

Meyerhoff, A.A., 1980, Geology of Reforma-Campeche shelf: Oil and Gas Journal, v. 21, p. 121–124.

Mountjoy, E.W., Cook, H.E., Pray, L.C., and McDaniel, P.N., 1972, Allochthonous carbonate debris flows—Worldwide indicators of reef complexes, banks, or shelf margins: 24th International Geological Congress, Proceedings, Section 6, p. 172–189.

Mullins, H.T., 1978, Deep carbonate bank margin structure and sedimentation in the northern Bahamas: Chapel Hill, University of North Carolina, Ph.D. thesis, 166 p.

———1983, Modern carbonate slopes and basins of the Bahamas, *in* Cook, H.E., Hine, A.C., and Mullins, H.T., eds., Platform margins and deep water carbonates: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Short Course 12, p. 4–1–4–138.

———1985, Modern deep-water carbonates along the Blake-Bahama boundary, *in* Crevello, P.D., and Harris, P.M., eds., Deep-water carbonates—A core workshop: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Core Workshop 6, p. 461–490.

———1986, Periplatform carbonates: Colorado School of Mines Quarterly, v. 81, no. 2, 63 p.

Mullins, H.T., and others, 1985, Shallow subsurface diagenesis of Pleistocene periplatform ooze: northern Bahamas: Sedimentology, v. 32, p. 473–494.

Mullins, H.T., and Cook, H.E., 1986, Carbonate apron models: Alternatives to the submarine fan model for paleoenvironmental analysis and hydrocarbon exploration: Sedimentary Geology, v. 48, no. 1/2, p. 37–79.

Mullins, H.T., and Hine, A.C., 1986, Catastrophic collapse of the west Florida carbonate platform margin: Geology, v. 14, p. 167–170.

Mullins, H.T., and Hine, A.C., 1989, Scalloped bank margins: Beginning of the end for platform margins?: Geology, v. 17, p. 30–33.

Mullins, H.T., Heath, K.C., Van Buren, H.M., and Newton, C.R., 1984, Anatomy of modern open-ocean carbonate slope: Northern Little Bahama Bank: Sedimentology, v. 31, no. 1, p. 141–168.

Mullins, H.T., and Neumann, A.C., 1979, Deep carbonate bank margin structure and sedimentation in the northern Bahamas, *in* Doyle, L.J., and Pilkey, O.H., eds., Geology of continental slopes: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Special Publication 27, p. 165–192.

Mutti, E., and Ricci Lucchi, F., 1978, Turbidites of the northern Appenines: Introduction to facies analysis: International Geological Reviews, v. 20, p. 125–166.

Nelson, C.H., Carlson, P.R., Bryne, J.V., and Alpha, T.R., 1970, Development of the Astoria Canyon-fan physiography and comparison with similar systems: Marine Geology, v. 8, no. 3/4, p. 259–291.

Normark, W.R., 1978, Fan valleys, channels, and depositional

lobes on modern submarine fans: Characters for recognition of sandy turbidite environments: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 62, no. 6, p. 912–931.

Read, J.F., 1982, Carbonate platforms of passive (extensional) continental margins: Types, characteristics and evolution: Tectonophysics, v. 81, p. 195–212.

Ruiz-Ortiz, P.A., 1983, A carbonate submarine fan in a fault controlled basin of the Upper Jurassic, Beltic Cordillera, southern Spain: Sedimentology, v. 30, no. 1, p. 33–48.

Sarg, J.F., 1988, Carbonate sequence stratigraphy, *in* Wilgus, C.K., and others, eds., Sea-level changes: An integrated approach: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Special Publication 42, p. 155–181.

Schlager, W., and Chermak, A., 1979, Sediment facies of platform-basin transition, Tongue of the Ocean, Bahamas, *in* Doyle, L.J., and Pilkey, O.H., eds., Geology of continental slopes: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Special Publication 27, p. 193–208.

Scholle, P.A., 1977, Deposition, diagenesis, and hydrocarbon potential of "deeper-water" limestones: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Short Course Notes, 25 p.

Shanmugam, G., and Moiola, R.J., 1988, Submarine fans: Characteristics, models, classification, and reservoir potential: Earth Science Reviews, v. 24, p. 383–428.

Thomson, A.F., and Thomasson, M.R., 1969, Shallow to deep water facies development in the Dimple Limestone (Lower Pennsylvanian), Marathon region, Texas, *in* Friedman, G.M., ed., Depositional environments in carbonate rocks: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Special Publication 14, p. 57–78.

Viniegra, F., 1981, Great carbonate bank of Yucatan, southern Mexico: Journal of Petroleum Geology, v. 3, p. 247–278.

Viniegra, F., and Castillo-Tejero, C., 1970, Golden Lane fields, Veracruz, Mexico, *in* Halbouty, M.T., ed., Geology of giant petroleum fields: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Memoir 14, p. 309–325.

Walker, R.G., 1978, Deep-water sandstone facies and ancient submarine fans: Models for exploration for stratigraphic traps: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 62, no. 6, p. 932–966.

Walker, R.G., 1984, ed., Facies models: Geoscience Canada Reprint Series 1, 317 p.

Watts, K.F., 1985, Evolution of a carbonate slope facies along a southern Tethyan continental margin: The Mesozoic Sumeini Group and the Qumayrah facies of the Muti Formation, Oman: Santa Cruz, University of California, Ph.D. thesis, 475 p.

Watts, K.F., and Garrison, R.E., 1986, Sumeini Group, Oman—Evolution of a Mesozoic carbonate slope on a south Tethyan continental margin: Sedimentary Geology, v. 48, no. 1/2, p. 107–168.

Wilson, J.L., 1975, Carbonate facies in geologic history: New York, Springer-Verlag, 471 p.

Wright, V.P., and Wilson, R.C.L., 1984, A carbonate submarine fan sequence from the Jurassic of Portugal: Journal of Sedimentary Petrology, v. 54, no. 2, p. 394–412.

Deep-Water Fan Systems

By William R. Normark[1]

About the same time that Shepard and his peers had documented the widespread occurrence and types of submarine canyons and their importance in providing pathways for terrigenous sediment to reach the deep-sea floor (see review by Shepard and Dill, 1966), mapping of onshore turbidite deposits had begun to define the nature of the coarse-grained, fan-shaped deposits fed by ancient submarine canyons (Sullwold, 1960; Jacka and others, 1968). General depositional models for submarine fans began to appear shortly thereafter (Normark, 1970; Mutti and Ricci Lucchi, 1972), and the number of models and model variations has blossomed, especially during the last decade.

The three general types of studies used for the more common fan models are: (1) field (outcrop) mapping, (2) acoustic imaging of modern fans, and (3) seismic-stratigraphic studies. Models for "ancient" turbidite deposits are generally based on field work that in some cases can be augmented by analysis of borehole cores. The most widely used are facies models, which are primarily based upon interpretation of fan depositional environments through detailed vertical-section measurements from outcrop studies (Mutti and Ricci Lucchi, 1972, 1975; Ricci Lucchi, 1975; Mutti, 1977, 1979). "Morphologic," or modern-fan, models are based on the knowledge of the surface-shape characteristics of the fan system together with some general idea of the nature (grain size, composition, internal structure, and stratigraphic control) of the upper few meters or tens of meters of the fan sediments (Normark, 1970, 1978; Nelson, 1976). The study of modern fans with side-looking-sonar images and high-resolution seismic-reflection profiles (1–10 kHz) in conjunction with core data commonly provides an acoustic-facies scheme or facies combining acoustic characters and surficial-sediment type. Seismic-stratigraphic models are based on deep-penetration, but low-resolution, seismic-reflection profiles (Vail and others, 1977; Vail, 1987). This technique generally results in mapping only the large-scale features of deep-water fan systems, such as lobes or major channel-levee systems, but has the advantage of being suitable for either modern or buried systems whether in deep water or within filled basins along continental margins.

As more data became available for the relatively poorly documented modern submarine fans, some sedimentation models reflected an attempt to combine characters observed from work on modern and ancient deposits (for example, Nelson and Nilsen, 1974; Walker, 1978; see also review by Howell and Normark, 1982). Such attempts have not always met with general approval; see, for example, the discussion and reply sequence of the Walker paper (Nilsen, 1980; Normark, 1980; Walker, 1980). With the recognition of the strong imprint that sea-level changes have on the development of deep-water clastic deposits, later models combine (or blend without specific attribution) observations from all three basic types of study (Vail and others, 1977; Mutti, 1985; Pickering and others, 1986; Vail, 1987; Shanmugam and Moiola, 1988). Many additional sedimentation-model variations of the basic themes described in the references above have resulted from modification of one or only a few components of an established general model to "better fit" a limited set of field observations, commonly from a poorly understood deposit. Such ad hoc models have limited use for interpretation of other turbidite systems.

All three model types and some of the various hybrid versions have been widely used but generally without recognizing (or admitting) the basic differences in the types of observations used. During the last half decade, however, an ever more common theme among fans (friends) of submarine fans has been to express concern over the general applicability and usefulness of existing models for submarine fan deposits, whether such models are concerned with deciphering depositional processes or predicting reservoir potential for hydrocarbon exploration (Mutti, 1984; Bouma and others, 1985; Normark and others, 1985; Shanmugam and Moiola, 1985; Shanmugam and others, 1985; Normark, 1986; Mutti and Normark, 1987). The questions raised in the references above were discussed in several international forums; reviews of most of the submarine fans and turbidite systems that have been studied to date are provided in two books covering these forums (Bouma and others, 1985; Weimer and Link, in press).

The first COMFAN (COMmittee on FANs) meeting in 1982 provided a chance to compare data from 23 modern and ancient turbidite systems. Participants at this workshop could not agree on common definitions for many of the terms used to describe fan features but did agree to a common set of criteria to present their

[1]U.S. Geological Survey, Menlo Park, Calif.

research. The volume resulting from this meeting reviews 28 different turbidite systems and includes preliminary results from Leg 96 of the Deep Sea Drilling Program on the Mississippi Fan (Bouma and others, 1985). Although seismic-stratigraphic analyses were available for several turbidite systems discussed at COMFAN I, a special session at the 1987 Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Midyear Meeting focused directly on the seismic stratigraphy of submarine fans. The results of this forum are presented in a book covering more than 15 turbidite systems (Weimer and Link, in press). The groundwork laid by these two meetings provided the background for the COMFAN II workshop in 1988, where all three approaches to the study of deep-water fans were incorporated (Mutti and others, in press). The examples that follow illustrate the types of interpretational discrepancies (discussed at the COMFAN meetings) that arise from utilizing different techniques to study submarine fans.

Fan divisions (implied depositional environments) based on examination of modern systems rely on morphologic characters such as the nature of the channels, average slope, and geographic position, but similarly named divisions for ancient turbidite deposits that are based on outcrop mapping or borehole studies are keyed to the nature of the sedimentary rock characters as determined from detailed vertical-section measurements, including bed thickness, grain size, and sedimentary structures, as well as the vertical (and in a few cases, horizontal) sequence(s) that may be exhibited using these characters. Interpretations of modern fans generally consider the basin-plain environment to be the most distal facies of and time-equivalent with the main fan body. On the other hand, at the coarser scale of observation obtained with seismic-stratigraphic data, major fan bodies are interpreted to prograde over basin-plain deposits of an earlier phase of basin development.

The use of the term lobe or depositional lobe shows the greatest variation between students of submarine turbidite systems (Mutti and Normark, 1987). The most widely referenced application of the term is based on the original work of Mutti and Ricci Lucchi (1972), whose classic examples are from turbidite systems formed in elongate basins within compressional margin settings. Their lobe features are tabular, channel-free, coarsening- and thickening-upward sandstone bodies that can extend for tens of kilometers parallel to the basin axis; these general characters are supplemented by facies distinctions based on the details of bedding features. Lobe distinctions based on seismic-reflection profiles, on the other hand, suggest that they are mounded features with downlap relations of internal reflectors at their margins (Mutti and others, in press). The definition of lobe features on modern fans follows neither of the sets of characters noted above (see the summary in Mutti and Normark, 1987); instead, the term "lobe" is applied variously to any area of sand deposition, with or without channels. The thickness of the lobes from modern fans is generally not determined (being too thin to be resolved with the low-frequency reflection profiles needed to achieve subbottom penetration in sandy environments), and the nature of the sediment composing the lobes is based on short surficial core samples from the upper few meters of the deposit.

Our understanding of modern fans is strongly tied to our interpretation of the shape of the deposit, even though for most fans we do not have precise morphologic control. Long-range side-looking sonar images have shown a remarkable variety of surficial features not previously known from modern fans, but most side-looking systems do not provide a measure of the water depth; thus, only the plan shape is determined and not the associated relief. Without better knowledge of the actual vertical relief and of the type of sediment associated with the relief, it is difficult to use the side-looking sonar data from modern fans to help those working on outcrops by defining specific features to look for in vertical sections of ancient deposits.

NEW APPROACHES

Variations in the interpretation of deep-water fans of the kind noted above basically result from differences in the (1) types of observations used to map the deposits, (2) physical and temporal scales of features, and (3) characteristics of the basins containing the turbidite systems (Mutti and Normark, 1987, in press). Thus, it is not surprising that models derived from the separate "disciplines" lack general applicability when these differences are not taken into account.

Figure 3 shows the range of physical scales (horizontal dimension only) of the components of turbidite systems and of the types of observations commonly used to map turbidite systems. The key points to note are that the smallest features resolvable on modern deep-water fans and within deeply buried fan systems in continental-margin basins using standard shipboard seismic-reflection profiles could be recognized only in fairly impressive outcrops of ancient turbidites, where exposed beds could be traced over several kilometers. The limits on resolution obtainable with seismic-stratigraphic data nearly preclude the recognition of individual depositional lobe features unless they exceed several tens of meters in thickness. Thus, there are many gaps in the scale resolved and type of observations used to map turbidite systems.

The vertical scale in figure 3 schematically shows the general increase in the complexity and volume of turbidite systems as the time available for deposition in the basin increases. Thus, techniques appropriate for the study of depositional processes (at the scale of individual beds and elements; fig. 3) are quite different from those

that might yield basin history and an evaluation of the potential for petroleum reserves.

Comprehensive process or stratigraphic models for deep-water fans must be based on a combination of morphologic, sedimentologic, and structural/stratigraphic criteria; that is, they must be able to incorporate all types of observations. This can be done if similarly formed features of the same general scale are correctly identified. Rather than looking for general similarities among different fans to develop a model synthesizing sets of characters, Mutti and Normark (1987, in press) suggested that it is time to focus on key depositional and erosional features that characterize most turbidite systems. They identified a limited number of fan elements in terms that allow their recognition from outcrop, morphologic, or reflection-profile data; these elements are not strictly equivalent to the "architectural elements" of Miall (1985) because of the need to allow their distinction using widely varying techniques of observation (fig. 3). The basic elements include channels and channel-fill sequences, overbank deposits, lobe deposits, and characteristic erosional features, for example, scours, which are characteristic of the channel-lobe transition zone and large-scale shelf-edge/upper-slope failures (Mutti and Normark, 1987, in press).

The size and shape of the basin, together with the volume and grain-size distribution of the sediment supplied to the basin, are important factors in controlling the scale of the elements developed within any given turbidite system. Many comparisons of submarine fans have not considered the effects of the basin itself on controlling the growth pattern of the deposit.

Most turbidite systems described through outcrop mapping and borehole sampling are from basins formed on continental crust. The best known examples are from active margin environments where the basin shape, size, and longevity are controlled by syndepositional tectonism. Many of these basins are relatively narrow, elongate

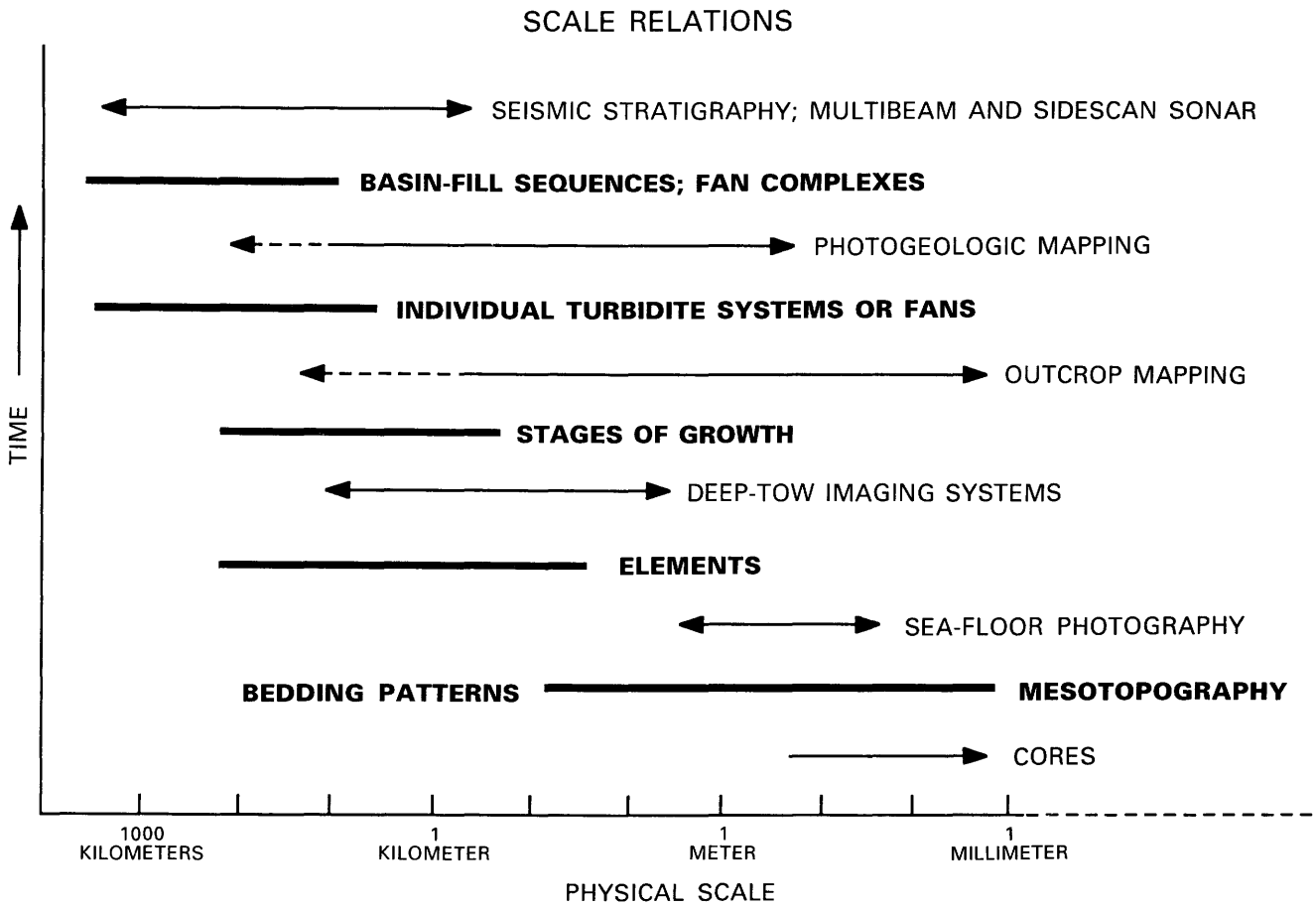


Figure 3. Relation in horizontal scale between observational techniques (light horizontal lines with arrows) used to map turbidite systems and components that compose such systems (heavy lines). Arrowheads indicate that scale range can be longer in special circumstances; for example, core samples can provide data at much smaller scale through the use of microscopic examination, and outcrops of exceptional length (>50 km) are known but not common. Vertical scale (schematic only) shows time element related to components of a turbidite system. Adapted from figures 1 and 2 in Mutti and Normark (1987), who defined elements and stages of turbidite systems.

troughs that provide a strong control on the turbidity currents bringing sediment to the basin. Much of the available observations on modern fans, however, comes from deposits formed on oceanic crust; the largest modern fans are fed by large rivers crossing passive margins where there is little tectonic activity to disturb the growth of the fan (Bouma and others, 1985). Fans formed on oceanic crust are deposited from turbidity currents that are able to spread over large areas of the sea floor as deposition buries the local relief. Thus, the shape, internal structure, and distribution of coarse-grained sediment can be substantially different between turbidite systems in active marginal basins and those on deep-ocean crust along passive margins. Comparison of submarine fan elements of similar size and from the same type of basin can be the first step in determining the main controls on deep-water siliciclastic turbidite deposition. If we understand these controls for turbidite systems from a sufficient range in size and basin characteristics, it should eventually be possible to develop depositional models of general applicability.

REFERENCES CITED

Bouma, A.H., Normark, W.R., and Barnes, N.E., 1985, Submarine fans and related turbidite systems: New York, Springer-Verlag, 351 p.

Howell, D.G., and Normark, W.R., 1982, Sedimentology of submarine fans, *in* Scholle, P.A., and Spearing, D., eds., Sandstone depositional environments: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Memoir 31, p. 365–404.

Jacka, A.D., Beck, R.H., St. Germain, L., and Harrison, S.C., 1968, Permian deep-sea fans of the Delaware Mountain Group (Guadalupian), Delaware basin, *in* Guadalupian Facies, Apache Mountain area, west Texas Permian basin section: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Publication 68–11, p. 49–90.

Miall, M.D., 1985, Architectural-element analysis: A new method of facies analysis applied to fluvial deposits: Earth Science Reviews, v. 22, p. 261–308.

Mutti, E., 1977, Distinctive thin-bedded turbidite facies and related depositional environments in the Eocene Hecho Group (south-central Pyrenees, Spain): Sedimentology, v. 24, p. 107–131.

———1979, Turbidites et cones sous-marins profonds, *in* Homewood, P., ed., Sedimentation détritique (fluviatile, littorale et marine): Institut de Geologie, University of Fribourg, Switz., p. 353–419.

———1984, Ancient turbidite systems: Models and problems: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 68, p. 1837.

———1985, Turbidite systems and their relations to depositional sequences, *in* Zuffa, G.G., ed., Provenance of arenites (NATO-ASI Series), Dordrecht, Neth., Reidel, p. 65–93.

Mutti, E., and Normark, W.R., 1987, Comparing examples of modern and ancient turbidite systems: Problems and concepts, *in* Leggett, J.K., and Zuffa, G.G., eds., Marine clastic sedimentology: Concepts and case studies: London, Graham and Trotman, p. 1–38.

———in press, An integrated approach to the study of turbidite systems, *in* Weimer, P., and Link, M.H., eds., Seismic facies and sedimentary processes of submarine fans and turbidite systems: New York, Springer-Verlag.

Mutti, E., Normark, W.R., and Posamentier, H.W., in press, Turbidite systems: State of the art and implications for exploration: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin.

Mutti, E., and Ricci Lucchi, F., 1972, Le torbiditi dell' Appenino settentrionale: Introduzione all' analisi di facies: Memorie della Societa Geologica Italiana, v. 11, p. 161–199.

———1975, Turbidite facies and facies associations, *in* Mutti, E., and others, eds., Examples of turbidite facies and associations from selected formations of the northern Apennines: Field trip guidebook A-11, 9th International Association of Sedimentologists Congress, Nice, p. 21–36.

Nelson, C.H., 1976, Late Pleistocene and Holocene depositional trends, processes, and history of Astoria deep-sea fan, northeast Pacific: Marine Geology, v. 20, p. 129–173.

Nelson, C.H., and Nilsen, T.H., 1974, Depositional trends of modern and ancient deep-sea fans, *in* Dott, A.H., and Shaver, R.H., eds., Modern and ancient geosynclinal sedimentation: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Special Publication 19, p. 69–91.

Nilsen, T.H., 1980, Modern and ancient submarine fans: Discussion of papers by R.G. Walker and W.R. Normark: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 64, p. 1094–1101.

Normark, W.R., 1970, Growth patterns of deep-sea fans: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 54, p. 2170–2195.

———1978, Fan valleys, channels, and depositional lobes on modern submarine fans—Characters for recognition of sandy turbidite environments: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 62, p. 912–931.

———1980, Modern and ancient submarine fans: Reply: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 64, p. 1108–1112.

———1986, Modern turbidite systems: Model limitations and concepts for comparing fan systems: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 70, p. 1761–1762.

Normark, W.R., Barnes, N.E., and Bouma, A.H., 1985, Comments and new directions for deep-sea fan research, *in* Bouma, A.H., Normark, W.R., and Barnes, N.E., eds., Submarine fans and related turbidite systems: New York, Springer-Verlag, p. 341–343.

Pickering, K., Stow, D., Watson, M., and Hiscott, R., 1986, Deep-water facies, processes and models: A review and classification scheme for modern and ancient sediments: Earth-Science Reviews, v. 23, p. 75–174.

Ricci Lucchi, F., 1975, Depositional cycles in two turbidite formations of northern Apennines (Italy): Journal of Sedimentary Petrology, v. 45, p. 3–43.

Shanmugam, G., Damuth, J.E., and Moiola, R.J., 1985, Is the turbidite facies association scheme valid for interpreting ancient submarine fan environments?: Geology, v. 13, p.

234–237.

Shanmugam, G., and Moiola, R.J., 1985, Submarine fan models: Problems and solutions, *in* Bouma, A.H., Normark, W.R., and Barnes, N.E., eds., Submarine fans and related turbidite systems: New York, Springer-Verlag, p. 29–34.

———1988, Submarine fans: Characteristics, models, classification, and reservoir potential: Earth-Science Review, v. 24, p. 383–428.

Shepard, F.P., and Dill, R.F., 1966, Submarine canyons and other sea valleys: Chicago, Rand McNally, 381 p.

Sullwold, H.H., Jr., 1960, Tarzana fan, deep submarine fan of late Miocene age, Los Angeles County, California: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 44, p. 433–457.

Vail, P.R., 1987, Seismic stratigraphic interpretation using sequence stratigraphy—Part 1: Seismic stratigraphy interpretation procedure, *in* Bally, A.W., ed., Atlas of seismic stratigraphy: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Studies in Geology 27, p. 1–10.

Vail, P.R., Mitchum, R.M., and Thompson, S., 1977, Seismic stratigraphy and global changes of sea level, part 4: Global cycles of relative changes of sea level, *in* Payton, C.E., ed., Seismic stratigraphy, application to hydrocarbon exploration: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Memoir 26, p. 83–97.

Walker, R.G., 1978, Deep-water sandstone facies and ancient submarine fans: Model for stratigraphic traps: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 62, p. 932–966.

———1980, Modern and ancient submarine fans: American Association Petroleum of Geologists Bulletin, v. 64, p. 1101–1108.

Weimer, P., and Link, M.H., in press, Seismic facies and sedimentary processes of submarine fans and turbidite systems: New York, Springer-Verlag.

Porosity

By James W. Schmoker *and* Donald L. Gautier[1]

Porosity is a volumetric measure of the interstices (pores) through which basin fluids must migrate and in which hydrocarbons are reservoired and is thus an important element of all petroleum systems. Porosity is defined as the percentage of the bulk volume of a rock that is occupied by interstices. Primary porosity refers to the original porosity still remaining. Secondary porosity refers to porosity developed during burial by chemical processes and fracturing. Effective porosity includes only those pores that are interconnected.

The common methods of porosity measurement reflect three scales of investigation: point counting describes thin sections with a thickness of 30 micrometers; laboratory methods involving the displacement or injection of inert fluids (typically mercury or helium) use core plugs with volumes of roughly 10 cm^3; and conventional wire-line logs sample rock volumes on the order of 1 m^3.

The measurement scale of porosity determinations is orders of magnitude smaller than that of petroleum systems. Furthermore, the lateral spacing of porosity measurements (and frequently the vertical spacing as well) is typically much larger than the scale of geologic heterogeneity. Therefore, in order to characterize the porosity distribution within a petroleum system, one must usually extrapolate from available porosity data according to some predictive model.

At the time of deposition, detrital sediments have porosities of 40 percent or more (Schmoker and Hester, 1986; Houseknecht, 1987; references cited therein). In the subsurface, however, porosities tend to be much lower. The dominant trend of porosity evolution in the subsurface is that of porosity destruction, as processes act to increase the thermodynamic stability of the system (Choquette and Pray, 1970; Baker and others, 1980).

The inexorable decrease of porosity during burial is not uniform, well-ordered, or easily comprehended, and therein lies the impetus for research. The primary thrust of current research related to porosity is not directed at measurement techniques but rather at the development of models for porosity variability in the subsurface.

Efforts to quantify subsurface porosity-affecting processes have included classical mathematical analyses (Durney, 1972; Elliott, 1973; de Boer, 1977; Tada and others, 1987), laboratory experiments (Sprunt and Nur, 1976; de Boer and others, 1977; Baker and others, 1980), computer modeling of subsurface chemical systems (summarized by Meshri, 1987), and the application of fractal geometry to pore systems (Krohn, 1988). Porosity is a particularly intractable parameter because it represents the space between minerals under investigation rather than the minerals themselves. The relations between matrix change and resulting porosity modification are complex and depend on a number of factors including grain shape and packing as well as on the value of porosity itself (Rittenhouse, 1971; Manus and Coogan, 1974; Mitra and Beard, 1980).

The progress being made in mathematical, experimental, and chemical studies of processes affecting subsurface porosity is substantial. Nevertheless, the quantitative evaluation of reservoir properties using these approaches is as yet beyond reach. Porosity change with burial must still be considered on a largely empirical basis.

Processes of mechanical compaction, chemical compaction, cementation, and dissolution all play significant roles in the evolution of subsurface porosity. Mechanical compaction reduces porosity by reorientation and fracture of grains and by ductile deformation of grains and matrix. Chemical compaction results in closer grain spacing due to the dissolution of grains at points of contact. Cementation occludes pores by the precipitation of authigenic minerals. Dissolution creates secondary pores by the chemical removal of framework grains or cement. (Dissolved material may be reprecipitated nearby, so that the development of secondary pores does not necessarily increase overall porosity.)

These four basic porosity-affecting processes are modified and controlled by a host of geologic factors. A partial list includes depositional environment, lithology, petrographic characteristics, patterns of meteoric-water circulation, chemistry of basin brines, presence of hydrocarbons, overpressuring, and proximity to fluid conduits such as faults and unconformities.

A large literature has accumulated empirically describing processes affecting subsurface porosity evolution and the modifying effects upon these processes of geologic factors such as those just listed. Significant research along these lines is continuing, as evidenced by numerous recent publications (for example, McDonald and Surdam, 1984; Scholle and Halley, 1985; Humphrey and others, 1986; Porter and James, 1986; Giles, 1987;

[1]U.S.Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.

Houseknecht, 1987, 1988; McBride and others, 1987; Scherer, 1987; Tada and others, 1987; Dutton and Land, 1988; Pittman, 1988; Shanmugam and Higgins, 1988; Wilson and McBride, 1988; Surdam and others, 1989).

As suggested by the preceding discussion, any viable predictive model for porosity variability in the subsurface must take into account processes as modified by geologic factors. That is, predictive porosity models must recognize individual diagenetic facies.

In addition, predictive models must also take rates of processes into account, in order to assess porosity change through time and burial within a given diagenetic facies. A common approach to this problem, and one that has been used repeatedly over the years, is to predict porosity change by correlating porosity to burial depth (for example, Athy, 1930; Maxwell, 1964; Baldwin and Butler, 1985). Depth can be accurately measured, and porosity-depth plots are of practical value for porosity prediction in some circumstances.

Depth, however, is a position coordinate that only specifies present-day location. As such, depth is not a causal variable and can be a poor indicator of the rates of processes that have acted upon a formation through time. If a region of interest is expanded to encompass more than a homogeneous thermal regime or a uniform burial history, porosity-depth plots lose their predictive value.

In the final analysis, processes of porosity change in the subsurface are influenced by time and temperature; time-temperature exposure (thermal maturity) is the relevant parameter for subsurface reaction kinetics (Siever, 1983). Plots of porosity versus thermal maturity (as opposed to depth), which typically show a power-function relationship, thus offer an alternative approach to the prediction of porosity change within a given facies (Schmoker, 1984; Schmoker and Gautier, 1988).

REFERENCES CITED

Athy, L.F., 1930, Density, porosity, and compaction of sedimentary rocks: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 14, no. 1, p. 1–24.

Baker, P.A., Kastner, M., Byerlee, J.D., and Lockner, D.A., 1980, Pressure solution and hydrothermal recrystallization of carbonate sediments—An experimental study: Marine Geology, v. 38, p. 185–203.

Baldwin, Brewster, and Butler, C.O., 1985, Compaction curves: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 69, no. 4, p. 622–626.

Choquette, P.W., and Pray, L.C., 1970, Geologic nomenclature and classification of porosity in sedimentary carbonates: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 54, no. 2, p. 207–250.

de Boer, R.B., 1977, On the thermodynamics of pressure solution—Interaction between chemical and mechanical forces: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 41, no. 2, p. 249–256.

de Boer, R.B., Nagtegaal, P.J.C., and Duyvis, E.M., 1977, Pressure solution experiments on quartz sand: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 41, no. 2, p. 257–264.

Durney, D.W., 1972, Solution transfer, an important geological deformation mechanism: Nature, v. 235, no. 5332, p. 315–317.

Dutton, S.P., and Land, L.S., 1988, Cementation and burial history of a low-permeability quartzarenite, Lower Cretaceous Travis Peak Formation, east Texas: Geological Society of America Bulletin, v. 100, no. 8, p. 1271–1282.

Elliott, David, 1973, Diffusion flow laws in metamorphic rocks: Geological Society of America Bulletin, v. 84, no. 8, p. 2645–2664.

Giles, M.R., 1987, Mass transfer and problems of secondary porosity creation in deeply buried hydrocarbon reservoirs: Marine and Petroleum Geology, v. 4 (August), p. 188–204.

Houseknecht, D.W., 1987, Assessing the relative importance of compaction processes and cementation to reduction of porosity in sandstones: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 71, no. 6, p. 633–642.

———1988, Intergranular pressure solution in four quartzose sandstones: Journal of Sedimentary Petrology, v. 58, no. 2, p. 228–246.

Humphrey, J.D., Ransom, K.L., and Matthews, R.K., 1986, Early meteoric diagenetic control of Upper Smackover production, Oaks Field, Louisiana: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 70, no. 1, p. 70–85.

Krohn, C.E., 1988, Sandstone fractal and euclidean pore volume distributions: Journal of Geophysical Research, v. 93, no. B4, p. 3286–3296.

Manus, R.W., and Coogan, A.H., 1974, Bulk volume reduction and pressure-solution derived cement: Journal of Sedimentary Petrology, v. 44, no. 2, p. 466–471.

Maxwell, J.C., 1964, Influence of depth, temperature, and geologic age on porosity of quartzose sandstones: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 48, no. 5, p. 697–709.

McBride, E.F., Land, L.S., and Mack, L.E., 1987, Diagenesis of eolian and fluvial feldspathic sandstones, Norphlet Formation (Upper Jurassic), Rankin County, Mississippi, and Mobile County, Alabama: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 71, no. 9, p. 1019–1034.

McDonald, D.A., and Surdam, R.C., eds., 1984, Clastic diagenesis: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Memoir 37, 434 p.

Meshri, I.D., 1987, AAPG Research Conference—Prediction of reservoir quality through chemical modeling: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 71, no. 11, p. 1436–1439.

Mitra, Shankar, and Beard, W.C., 1980, Theoretical models of porosity reduction by pressure solution for well-sorted sandstones: Journal of Sedimentary Petrology, v. 50, no. 4, p. 1347–1360.

Pittman, E.D., 1988, Diagenesis of Terry Sandstone (Upper Cretaceous), Spindle Field, Colorado: Journal of Sedimentary Petrology, v. 58, no. 5, p. 785–800.

Porter, E.W., and James, W.C., 1986, Influence of pressure, salinity, temperature, and grain size on silica diagenesis in quartzose sandstones: Chemical Geology, v. 57, p.

359–369.
Rittenhouse, Gordon, 1971, Pore-space reduction by solution and cementation: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 55, no. 1, p. 80–91.
Scherer, M., 1987, Parameters influencing porosity in sandstones: A model for sandstone porosity prediction: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 71, no. 5, p. 485–491.
Schmoker, J.W., 1984, Empirical relation between carbonate porosity and thermal maturity: An approach to regional porosity prediction: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 68, no. 11, p. 1697–1703.
Schmoker, J.W., and Gautier, D.L., 1988, Sandstone porosity as a function of thermal maturity: Geology, v. 16, no. 11, p. 1007–1010.
Schmoker, J.W., and Hester, T.C., 1986, Porosity of the Miami Limestone (late Pleistocene), lower Florida Keys: Journal of Sedimentary Petrology, v. 56, no. 5, p. 629–634.
Scholle, P.A., and Halley, R.B., 1985, Burial diagenesis: Out of sight, out of mind!, *in* Schneidermann, N., and Harris, P.M., eds., Carbonate cements: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Special Publication 36, p. 309–334.
Shanmugam, G., and Higgins, J.B., 1988, Porosity enhancement from chert dissolution beneath Neocomian unconformity—Ivishak Formation, North Slope, Alaska: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 72, no. 5, p. 523–535.
Siever, Raymond, 1983, Burial history and diagenetic reaction kinetics: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 67, no. 4, p. 684–691.
Sprunt, E.S., and Nur, Amos, 1976, Reduction of porosity by pressure solution: Experimental verification: Geology, v. 4, no. 8, p. 463–466.
Surdam, R.C., Crossey, L.J., Hagen, E.S., and Heasler, H.P., 1989, Organic-inorganic interactions and sandstone diagenesis: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 73, no. 1, p. 1–23.
Tada, Ryuji, Maliva, Robert, and Siever, Raymond, 1987, A new mechanism for pressure solution in porous quartzose sandstones: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 51, p. 2295–2301.
Wilson, J.C., and McBride, E.F., 1988, Compaction and porosity evolution of Pliocene sandstones, Ventura basin, Californa: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 72, no. 6, p. 664–681.

Clays

By Richard M. Pollastro[1]

Over the past few decades there has been an increased interest in the study of clay and clay minerals as applied to petroleum geology. Much of this interest has been generated because clay minerals can be beneficial; they are useful as potential exploration tools for understanding basin, source-rock, and reservoir histories. In contrast, it is almost a necessity to identify the type and nature of the clay in a potential reservoir rock to avoid serious problems during the production and recovery of hydrocarbons. It is the purpose of this report, however, to address the application of clays in petroleum studies with particular attention to specific clay methods that aid in evaluating the thermal history of sedimentary basins. In terms of the petroleum system, these methods are extremely useful in assessing the thermal history of a petroleum source rock.

Prior to about 1970, a gap existed in the clay science literature addressing the problems and applications of clays in petroleum geology. The possible role of clays in the search for oil was first addressed by Weaver (1960). However, not until the 1970's and 1980's, which I refer to as the "decades of diagenesis," was there significant interest and recognition in clay minerals as related to petroleum geology. During the past decade, however, research groups, conferences, and symposia addressing clays and hydrocarbons have resulted in special volumes and journal issues dedicated almost exclusively to the subject.

The earliest of these volumes containing several articles that described and illustrated the significance of clays in petroleum applications was *Aspects of Diagenesis*, edited by Scholle and Schluger (1979); a much less visible publication entitled *Geothermal Alteration of Clay Minerals and Shales: Diagenesis*, by Weaver (1979), also had considerable impact. Shortly thereafter, a short course sponsored by the Mineralogical Association of Canada resulted in a relatively informal publication entitled *Clays and the Resource Geologist*, edited by F.J. Longstaffe (1981). Special issues of *Clays and Clay Minerals* (1986a,b), both the "Clays in the Petroleum Industry Issue" (v. 34, no. 2) and "John Hower Memorial Issue" (v. 34, no. 4), contain numerous method and case history articles. Most recently, short course notes entitled *Clay Minerals for Petroleum Geologists and Engineers*, by E. Eslinger and D.R. Pevear (1988), provide an excellent overview of theory, interpretation, and case histories.

The most promising clay methods used in petroleum geology are those involving the application of clay diagenesis to the thermal and burial history of sedimentary rocks and basins. These methods can therefore also be applied to studies addressing the maturation, generation, and migration of hydrocarbons. All of the applications mentioned above involve the concepts of shale diagenesis that were first described in detail from studies of buried shale sequences in the Gulf Coast (Powers, 1957; Burst, 1959; Perry and Hower, 1970; Weaver and Beck, 1971; Hower and others, 1976). The most important diagenetic clay reaction in shales is the progressive transformation of smectite to illite by way of a series of mixed-layer illite/smectite (I/S) intermediates; this particular reaction series is commonly referred to as smectite diagenesis. Presently, there is a major controversy in clay science over the true crystallographic nature of material identified as I/S by X-ray powder diffraction (XRD). However, whether these changes are interpreted by the mixed-layer (Markovian) model (MacEwan, 1956, 1958; Reynolds, 1980) or the fundamental particle (Nadeau and others, 1984a,b) concepts, the reaction results in a progressive and irreversible increase in illite and corresponding decrease in expandability (commonly interpreted as smectite).

Recognition of smectite diagenesis is based mainly on the interpretation of XRD profiles. Interpretations of the changes in XRD profiles of I/S were first defined in detail by Reynolds and Hower (1970) who compared XRD profiles of natural materials to those calculated by computer. Their methods defined three basic, naturally occurring forms of I/S ordering: random ($R=0$) ordering, short-range or allevardite-like ($R=1$) ordering, and long-range or Kalkberg-like ($R \geq 3$) ordering. A method to calculate the approximate percentages of illite and smectite (expandable) layers in the mixed-layer phase also was proposed. Subsequently, numerous changes and updates in the modeling program have been made by Robert C. Reynolds Jr.; the latest version of the program, entitled NEWMOD, is available from Reynolds (Department of Earth Sciences, Dartmouth College, Hanover, NH 03755). In addition, several other methods have been described in the literature after the work of Reynolds and Hower for interpreting XRD profiles of I/S (Schultz, 1978; Srodon, 1980; Srodon and Eberl, 1984; Inoue and others, 1989).

[1]U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.

The most useful clay method applied to petroleum geology studies is clay mineral geothermometry. Concepts and models of clay geothermometry in diagenetic settings were first proposed by Hoffman and Hower (1979) and Weaver (1979). Changes in the I/S "phase" interpreted from XRD profiles show consistent relations with depth which, in fact, are related primarily to changes in temperature due to burial. Similar clay/temperature relations have been demonstrated for hydrothermal fluid systems and low-grade contact metamorphic situations. However, temperatures for changes in I/S phase differ in hydrothermal systems as compared to those temperatures for similar changes in I/S from progressive burial settings. These changes in I/S, therefore, are reliable maximum recording geothermometers provided that the proper temperature model is used (Pytte and Reynolds, 1989; Pollastro, 1989). During the last decade, numerous case history studies have applied and tested I/S clay models in diagenetic and hydrothermal settings worldwide. Other clay minerals that have been formed, destroyed, or changed during diagenesis, as well as I/S, also give reliable temperatures. No other clay minerals, however, have been studied or tested to the extent of the I/S series.

The most important change in I/S in relation to hydrocarbons is the conversion from random I/S (R=0) to ordered I/S (R=1). In samples from well profiles, the primary criterion for recognition of this conversion is the absence, or disappearance in downhole samples, of the 17-angstrom glycol *001* reflection on XRD patterns. The immediate change is recognized by the presence of a lesser expandable phase with smaller d-spacing (usually about 13 to 14 angstroms upon glycol solvation). However, the *001* glycol reflection of I/S with $R \geq 1$ shifts between 10 and 14 angstroms, depending upon specific composition and degree of ordering (Reynolds and Hower, 1970). If the actual change in the I/S reflections on XRD profiles cannot be recognized from random sampling or sample profiles, however, sufficient evidence must be established from control samples that a precursor 17-angstrom glycol, random-ordered phase existed before the I/S can be used as an absolute geothermometer. It is critical, therefore, to establish original compositions of these clays because detrital I/S may have undergone extensive illitization during a previous cycle (Pollastro and Scholle, 1986).

In burial diagenetic settings, this major change in I/S (R=0 to R=1) occurs in the temperature range of about 100 to 110 °C (Hoffman and Hower, 1979) and is roughly coincident with the onset of oil generation in rocks of Tertiary through Cretaceous age. In relatively short-lived (commonly <2 m.y.) geothermal systems, however, the temperature of this particular I/S change is about 130 to 140 °C. I/S with R=1 ordering, typically with 60 to 80 percent illite layers, is thermally stable between 100 and 175 °C. This temperature range is roughly coincident with the "oil window." Therefore, the simplest application of clays in burial diagenetic settings is to record the 100 to 110 °C isotherm using the R=0 to R=1 transition (Pollastro and Scholle, 1986; Pollastro and Schmoker, 1988), thereby providing an index of thermal maturity relative to hydrocarbon generation (Foscolos and Powell, 1980; Pollastro and Scholle, 1986). The method also has been used in modeling the thermal history of sedimentary basins (Bethke and others, 1988; Hagen and Surdam, 1989). This method is particularly valuable for samples lacking either vitrinite or other indicators from which the maturity level can be estimated directly. For example, the presence of a distinct 17-angstrom glycol XRD peak suggests that the rock is immature or marginally mature with respect to oil generation. Temperatures determined for this change in I/S phase shows excellent agreement when compared to temperatures calculated from mean vitrinite reflectance and "T_{max}" (Pevear and others, 1980; Burtner and Warner, 1986; Pollastro and Barker, 1986; Glassman and others, 1989, among others). Other studies have related this change in I/S to particular stages of oil generation (Weaver, 1979; Pollastro and Schmoker, 1988).

Clay geothermometry from changes in I/S observed on XRD profiles is also reliable at temperatures higher than the change from R=0 to R=1. The conversion from R=1 to $R \geq 3$ ordering occurs at about 175–180 °C (Hoffman and Hower, 1979) and can document the upper limit of oil generation for a particular potential source rock. A sample containing only $R \geq 3$ I/S would, therefore, be overmature with respect to oil generation and only would have potential to generate thermal methane. At temperatures exceeding those of the I/S transformation series, a different method in clay geothermometry is widely used. This method involves measurement on XRD profiles of peak width or a height-to-width ratio of the illite *001* (10-angstrom) reflection. Various forms of this method are referred to as "illite crystallinity," "crystallinity index," "Kubler index," "Weaver index," and "sharpness ratio" (Weaver, 1960, 1979; Kubler, 1964; Heroux and others, 1979). Although illite crystallinity correlates with vitrinite reflectance, the method is commonly applicable to levels of thermal maturity exceeding those for the generation of hydrocarbons.

Smectite diagenesis, specifically the major I/S change at 100 to 110 °C in progressive burial settings, has several other implications in petroleum geology. However, many of these implications are unclear and will require further research. For example, Surdam and others (1984, 1989) and Surdam and Crossey (1985) have used the coincidence in time and temperature of organic and clay reactions for characterizing the diagenesis of reservoir/source rock systems. The major I/S reaction at 100 to 110 °C is coincident with temperatures of organic acid maxima (80–120 °C). These authors suggested that

mineral oxidants and dehydration reactions involved in the conversion of smectite to illite contribute to creating optimum diagenetic conditions for maximizing porosity preservation or enhancement in sandstone reservoirs. In contrast, many other authors have addressed smectite diagenesis as a contributor to reservoir cementation (Towe, 1962; Boles and Franks, 1979; McHargue and Price, 1982). Others suggest that the diagenetic transformation of smectite to illite results in increased catalytic activity that promotes the low-temperature transformation of organic matter into liquid and gaseous hydrocarbons (Johns, 1979; 1981; Johns and McKallip, 1989). Smectite diagenesis or specific changes in I/S have also been correlated to expulsion or migration of hydrocarbons and zones of abnormal geopressures (Powers, 1967; Burst, 1969; Bruce, 1984; Colton-Bradley, 1987; Shaw and Primmer, 1989).

In summary, clay minerals are useful tools in understanding both the depositional and diagenetic settings of sedimentary rocks. In particular, the major clay reaction in buried sedimentary rocks, the conversion of smectite to illite through I/S intermediates, is an excellent maximum recording geothermometer. Methods of clay geothermometry, therefore, can greatly assist in evaluating the thermal history of a sedimentary basin. Specific clay geothermometers are approximately coincident with temperatures for hydrocarbon "windows." In a petroleum system, therefore, clays are useful in determining the thermal history of source rocks.

REFERENCES CITED

Bethke, C.M., Harrison, W.J., Upson, C., and Altaner, S.P., 1988, Supercomputer analysis of sedimentary basins: Science, v. 239, p. 261–267.

Boles, J.R., and Franks, S.G., 1979, Clay diagenesis in the Wilcox sandstones of southwest Texas: Implications of smectite diagenesis on sandstone cementation: Journal of Sedimentary Petrology, v. 49, p. 55–70.

Bruce, C.H., 1984, Smectite dehydration—Its relation to structural development and hydrocarbon accumulation in northern Gulf of Mexico: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 68, p. 673–683.

Burst, J.F., Jr., 1959, Post diagenetic clay mineral-environmental relationships in the Gulf Coast Eocene: Clays and Clay Minerals, v. 6, p. 327–341.

———1969, Diagenesis of Gulf Coast clayey sediments and its possible relation to petroleum migration: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 68, p. 73–93.

Burtner, R.L., and Warner, M.A., 1986, Relationship between illite/smectite diagenesis and hydrocarbon generation in Lower Cretaceous Mowry and Skull Creek Shales of the Northern Rocky Mountain area: Clays and Clay Minerals, v. 34, p. 390–402.

Clays and Clay Minerals, 1986a, Clays in the Petroleum Industry Issue: v. 34, no. 2, p. 113–228.

———1986b, John Hower Memorial Issue, v. 34, no. 4, p. 357–500.

Colton-Bradley, V.A., 1987, Role of pressure in smectite dehydration—Effects on geopressure and smectite-to-illite transformation: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 71, p. 1414–1427.

Eslinger, E., and Pevear, D.R., 1988, Clay minerals for petroleum geologists and engineers: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Short Course Notes 22.

Foscolos, A.E., and Powell, T.G., 1980, Mineralogical and geochemical transformation of clays during catagenesis and their relation to oil generation, *in* Miall, A.D., ed., Facts and principles of world petroleum occurrence: Canadian Society of Petroleum Geologists Memoir 6, p. 153–172.

Glassman, J.R., Larter, S., Briedis, N.A., and Lundegard, P.D., 1989, Shale diagenesis in the Bergen High area, North Sea: Clays and Clay Minerals, v. 37, p. 97–112.

Hagen, E.S, and Surdam, R.C., 1989, Thermal evolution of Laramide-style basins: Constraints from the northern Bighorn basin, Wyoming and Montana, *in* Naeser, N.D., and McCulloh, T.H., eds., Thermal history of sedimentary basins: New York, Springer-Verlag, p. 277–295.

Heroux, Y., Chagnon, A., and Bertrand, R., 1979, Compilation and correlation of major themal maturation indicators: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 63, p. 2128–2144.

Hoffman, J., and Hower, J., 1979, Clay mineral assemblages as low grade metamorphic geothermometers: Application to the thrust faulted disturbed belt of Montana, *in* Scholle, P.A., and Schluger, P.S., Aspects of diagenesis: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Special Publication 26, p. 55–79.

Hower, J., Eslinger, E.V., Hower, M.E., and Perry, E.A, 1976, Mechanism of burial metamorphism of argillaceous sediment: Mineralogical and chemical evidence: Geological Society of America Bulletin, v. 87, p. 725–737.

Inoue, A., Bouchet, A., Velde, B., and Meunier, A., 1989, Convenient technique for estimation of smectite layer percentage in randomly interstratified illite/smectite minerals: Clays and Clay Minerals, v. 37, p. 227–234.

Johns, W.D., 1979, Clay mineral catalysis and petroleum generation: Annual Reviews in Earth and Planetary Science, v. 7, p. 183–198.

———1981, The role of clay mineral matrix in petroleum generation during burial diagenesis, *in* van Olphan, J., and Veniale, F, eds., Proceedings of the VIIth International Clay Conference: Developments in Sedimentology 35, p. 655–664.

Johns, W.D., and McKallip, T.E., 1989, Burial diagenesis and specific catalytic activity of illite/smectite clays from Vienna basin, Austria: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 73, p. 472–482.

Kubler, B., 1964, Les argiles, indicateurs de metamorphisme: Reviews Insitute Francais Pétrole, v. 19, p. 1093–1113.

Longstaffe, F.J., ed., 1981, Short Course on clays and the resource geologist: Mineralogical Society of Canada Short Course Handbook 7, 199 p.

MacEwan, D.M.C., 1956, Fourier transform methods for studying scattering from lamellar systems: I. A direct method

for analyzing interstratified mixtures: Kolloidzeitschrift, v. 149, p. 96–108.

———1958, Fourier transform methods for studying X-ray scattering from lamellar systems: II. The calculation of X-ray diffraction effects for various types of interstratification: Kolloidzeitschrift, v. 156, p. 61–67.

McHargue, T.R., and Price, R.C., 1982, Dolomite from clay in argillaceous or shale-associated marine carbonates: Journal of Sedimentary Petrology, v. 51, p. 553–562.

Nadeau, P.H., Wilson, M.J., McHardy, W.J., and Tait, J.M., 1984a, Interparticle diffraction: A new concept for interstratified clays: Clay Minerals, v. 19, p. 757–769.

———1984b, Interstratified clay as fundamental particles: Science, v. 225, p. 923–925.

Perry, E.A., and Hower, J., 1970, Burial diagenesis in Gulf Coast pelitic sediments: Clays and Clay Minerals, v. 29, p. 165–177.

———1972, Late-stage dehydration in deeply buried pelitic sediments: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 56, p. 2013–2021.

Pevear, D.R., Williams, V.E., and Mustoe, G., 1980, Kaolinite, smectite, and K-rectorite in bentonites: Relation to coal rank at Tulameen, British Columbia: Clays and Clay Minerals, v. 28, p. 241–254.

Pollastro, R.M., 1989, Clay minerals as geothermometers and indicators of thermal maturity—Application to basin history and hydrocarbon generation: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 73, p. 1171.

Pollastro, R.M., and Barker, C.E., 1986, Application of clay-mineral, vitrinite reflectance, and fluid inclusion studies to the thermal and burial history of the Pinedale anticline, Green River basin, Wyoming, *in* Gautier, D.L., ed., Roles of organic matter in sediment diagenesis: Society of Economic Paleontologist and Mineralogists Special Publication 38, p. 73–83.

Pollastro, R.M., and Schmoker, J., 1988, Relationship of clay-mineral diagenesis to temperature, age, and hydrocarbon generation—An example from the Anadarko basin, Oklahoma, *in* Carter, L.M.H. ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988 program and abstracts: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 49–50.

Pollastro, R.M., and Scholle, P.A., 1986, Diagenetic relationships in a hydrocarbon-productive chalk—The Cretaceous Niobrara Formation, *in* F.A. Mumpton, ed., Studies in diagenesis: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1578, p. 219–236.

Powers, M.C., 1957, Adjustment of clays to chemical change and the concept of the equivalence level: Clays and Clay Minerals, Proceeding of the Sixth National Conference, p. 309–326.

———1967, Fluid release mechanisms in compacting marine mudrocks and their importance in oil exploration: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 51, p. 1240–1254.

Pytte, A.M., and Reynolds, R.C., Jr., 1989, The thermal transformation of smectite to illite, *in* Naeser, N.D., and McColluh, T.H., eds., Thermal history of sedimentary basins: New York, Springer-Verlag, p. 133–140.

Reynolds, R.C., Jr., 1980, Interstratified clay minerals, *in* Brindley, G.W., and Brown, G., eds., Crystal structures of clay minerals and their X-ray identification: London, Mineralogical Society, p. 249–303.

Reynolds, R.C., Jr., and Hower, J., 1970, The nature of interlayering in mixed layer illite/montmorillonite: Clays and Clay Minerals, v. 18, p. 25–36.

Scholle, P.A., and Schluger, P.R., eds., 1979, Aspects of diagenesis: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogist Special Publication 26, 443 p.

Schultz, L.G., 1978, Mixed-layer clay in the Pierre Shale and equivalent rocks, northern Great Plains region: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1064-A, 28 p.

Shaw, H.F., and Primmer, T.J., 1989, Diagenesis in shales from a partly overpressured sequence in the Gulf Coast, Texas, USA: Marine and Petroleum Geology, v. 6, p. 121–128.

Srodon, J., 1980, Precise identification of illite/smectite interstratifications by X-ray powder diffraction: Clays and Clay Minerals, v. 28, p. 401–411.

Srodon, J., and Eberl, D.D., 1984, Illite, *in* Bailey, S.W., ed., Micas: Reviews in Mineralogy, v. 13, p. 495–544.

Surdam, R.C., Boese, S.W., and Crossey, L.J., 1984, The chemistry of secondary porosity, *in* McDonald, D.A. and Surdam, R.C. eds., Clastic diagenesis: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Memoir 37, p. 127–151.

Surdam, R.C., and Crossey, L.J., 1985, Organic-inorganic reactions during progressive burial: Key to porosity/permeability enhancement and/or preservation: Philosophical Transactions, Royal Society of London, Series A, v. 315, p. 545–563.

Surdam, R.C., Crossey, L.J., Hagen, E.S., and Heasler, H.P., 1989, Organic-inorganic interactions and sandstone diagenesis: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 73, p. 1–23.

Towe, K.M., 1962, Clay mineral diagenesis as a possible source of silica cement in sedimentary rocks: Journal of Sedimentary Petrology, v. 32, p. 26–28.

Weaver, C.E., 1960, Possible uses of clay minerals in the search for oil: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 44, p. 1505–1518.

———1979, Geothermal alteration of clay minerals and shales: Diagenesis: Office of Nuclear Waste and Isolation Technical Report 21, 176 p.

Weaver, C.E., and Beck, K.C., 1971, Clay water diagenesis during burial: How mud becomes gneiss: Geological Society of America, Special Paper 134, 96 p.

Fission-Track Analysis in Petroleum Basins

By Nancy D. Naeser[1]

THE FISSION-TRACK METHOD

Fission tracks are zones of intense damage formed when fission fragments travel through a solid. Several naturally occurring isotopes fission spontaneously, but only ^{238}U has a sufficiently short fission half-life (9.9×10^{15} yr) to produce significant numbers of tracks over times of geologic interest (Fleischer and others, 1975).

A number of common minerals contain trace amounts of uranium. Because ^{238}U fissions spontaneously at a known rate, fission tracks can be used to date these minerals. An age can be calculated by determining the number of spontaneous tracks intersecting a polished surface of the mineral and the amount of uranium that produced those tracks. The two minerals most commonly dated by the fission-track method are apatite and zircon. The techniques used in dating have been developed by physicists and geologists since the early 1960's (Fleischer and others, 1975; C.W. Naeser, 1976, 1979a; N.D. Naeser and others, 1989b).

If a mineral containing fission tracks is heated to a high enough temperature, the damage zone undergoes progressive shortening and ultimately disappears, leading to a reduction in the number of observable tracks and thus an anomalously young fission-track age. Different minerals undergo this "annealing" over different temperature ranges. The range for any given mineral depends on the duration of heating: the longer the mineral is heated, the lower the temperature required to anneal its tracks.

More research has been devoted to determining the annealing kinetics of apatite than any other mineral. Data have been obtained both from laboratory heating experiments (for example, C.W. Naeser and Faul, 1969; Märk and others, 1973; Zimmermann and Gaines, 1978; Crowley, 1985; Green and others, 1985, 1986; Crowley and Cameron, 1987, in press; Laslett and others, 1987; Crowley and others, 1988; Duddy and others, 1988; Green, 1988; Hughes and others, 1988) and by observing the annealing behavior of apatite in drill holes in areas where the thermal history of the rocks is reasonably well known (C.W. Naeser, 1979a, 1981; Gleadow and Duddy, 1981; N.D. Naeser and others, 1987a, 1989a).

Ongoing research continues to more accurately define apatite annealing kinetics, clarify the response of apatite track lengths to annealing (particularly in detrital suites derived from a number of parent rocks of different age and thermal history), and improve the predictive capabilities of apatite annealing models. One topic that has received considerable attention in recent years is the effect of chemical composition on annealing temperatures of apatite. It now appears that the annealing susceptibilities of F-, Sr-F-, and OH- apatite are so similar that all can probably be approximated by F-apatite data. Chlorapatite, however, is significantly more resistant to annealing; at fixed heating times in the laboratory, it anneals at temperatures up to 30 °C higher than other apatite varieties (Crowley and Cameron, 1987; Crowley and others, 1988; Hughes and others, 1988). Similiar variation in annealing temperatures related to Cl content is observed in drill-hole samples from the Otway basin, Australia (Green and others, 1985, 1989). Available information indicates that, in contrast to the Otway Basin, apatite suites are typically dominated by fluorapatite with insignificant chlorine (for example, Berry and Mason, 1959; Deer and others, 1962; N.D. Naeser and others, 1989a) and can reasonably be interpreted using fluorapatite annealing temperatures. Nevertheless, until the effects of composition on annealing temperatures are fully resolved, this topic will undoubtedly continue to be investigated, and it should be considered when interpreting apatite fission-track data.

The most complete set of empirically derived annealing temperatures presently available (C.W. Naeser, 1981) was determined on fluorapatite (K.D. Crowley, written communication, 1988). These data indicate that apatite is effectively totally annealed (yields a zero age) at temperatures that range from about 105 °C for relatively long-term heating of about 100 million years duration to 150 °C for about 100,000 years.

Annealing temperatures for zircon are not as well known as for apatite, but limited data show that they are higher and are probably in the range of 160 to 250 °C for heating over periods of more than 1 million years (for example, Harrison and others, 1979; C.W. Naeser, 1979a; Zeitler, 1985; Hurford, 1986).

BASIN ANALYSIS

Fission tracks in apatite and zircon are used in a wide range of studies in basin analysis (reviewed in N.D. Naeser and others, 1989b). The annealing of fission

[1]U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.

tracks, and the resulting effect on fission-track age and track lengths, particularly in apatite, can be used to reconstruct the thermal history of basins, from the deposition and burial of sediments through subsequent cooling related to uplift and erosion. Annealing can also be used to define more localized temperature anomalies, such as those related to intrusions and to the passage of high-temperature fluids through a basin (C.W. Naeser, 1979b; Gleadow and others, 1983, 1986a, 1986b; Green and others, 1989; N.D. Naeser and others, 1989b). The first study using fission tracks to reconstruct the thermal history of a basin appeared only 10 years ago, but the method has now been used in basins throughout the world (for example, Briggs and others, 1979, 1981a, 1981b; Duddy and Gleadow, 1982, 1985; Gleadow and others, 1983; Lakatos and Miller, 1983; Gleadow and Duddy, 1984; N.D. Naeser, 1984, 1986, in press; Johnsson, 1985, 1986; Giegengack and others, 1986; Marshallsea, 1986; Miller and others, 1986; Duddy and others, 1987; N.D. Naeser and others, 1987a, 1989a, 1989b, in press; Dumitru, 1988, 1989; Feinstein and others, 1989; Green and others, 1989). Fission tracks in apatite and zircon are attractive for studying the thermal history of basins because they provide both *temperature* and *time* information over a temperature range that coincides with hydrocarbon generation temperatures (Hood and others, 1975; Waples, 1980; N.D. Naeser and others, 1989b), temperatures recorded in the paleothermal anomalies associated with some mineral deposits (C.W. Naeser and others, 1980; Cunningham and Barton, 1984; C.W. Naeser and Cunningham, 1984; Beaty and others, 1988), and temperatures associated with a number of other low- to moderate-temperature processes in basins such as, clay diagenesis and conodont color alteration.

Typically, information on thermal history of basins is provided by apatite because most rocks sampled in basins have not been heated to temperatures sufficiently high to anneal zircon. The presence of unannealed zircon does, however, set approximate limits on maximum paleotemperatures, and the ages of individual unannealed zircon grains provide data on the provenance of sediments that may be difficult to obtain by other methods. For example, within a detrital grain suite it may be possible to correlate individual age populations to probable parent rocks in order to delineate sediment transport patterns in a basin (Zeitler and others, 1982, 1986; Hurford and others, 1984; Johnson, 1984; Yim and others, 1985; Baldwin and others, 1986). Changes in the age populations observed in a series of samples collected through a stratigraphic section in a basin can be used to reconstruct changes in sedimentation patterns, to define input from different source areas, and to reconstruct the uplift and erosion history of the parent rocks (Zeitler and others, 1982, 1986; N.D. Naeser and others, 1987b; Cerveny and others, 1988).

Zircon has also been used extensively to date volcanic ashes (and their altered equivalents, bentonites and tonsteins) (reviewed in C.W. Naeser and N.D. Naeser, 1988). These units form widespread marker horizons that can be valuable for establishing correlation and chronology within sedimentary sequences.

REFERENCES CITED

Baldwin, S.L., Harrison, T.M., and Burke, Kevin, 1986, Fission track evidence for the source of accreted sandstones, Barbados: Tectonics, v. 5, p. 457–468.

Beaty, D.W., Naeser, C.W., Cunningham, C.G., and Landis, G.P., 1988, Genetic model for the Gilman District (Colo.), based on fluid inclusion, stable isotope, geologic, and fission-track time/temperature studies [abs.]: Geological Society of America Abstracts with Programs, v. 20, p. A38.

Berry, L.G., and Mason, Brian, 1959, Mineralogy: San Francisco, W.H. Freeman, 630 p.

Briggs, N.D., Naeser, C.W., and McCulloh, T.H., 1979, Thermal history of sedimentary basins by fission-track dating [abs.]: Geological Society of America Abstracts with Programs, v. 11, p. 394.

———1981a, Thermal history of sedimentary basins by fission-track dating [abs.]: Nuclear Tracks, v. 5, p. 235–237.

———1981b, Thermal history by fission-track dating, Tejon Oil Field area, California [abs.]: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 65, p. 906.

Cerveny, P.F., Naeser, N.D., Zeitler, P.K., Naeser, C.W., and Johnson, N.M., 1988, History of uplift and relief of the Himalaya during the past 18 million years: Evidence from fission-track ages of detrital zircons from sandstones of the Siwalik Group, *in* Kleinspehn, K.L., and Paola, C., eds., New perspectives in basin analysis: New York, Springer-Verlag, p. 43–61.

Crowley, K.D., 1985, Thermal significance of fission-track length distributions: Nuclear Tracks, v. 10, p. 311–322.

Crowley, K.D., and Cameron, Maryellen, 1987, Annealing of etchable fission-track damage in apatite—Effects of anion chemistry [abs.]: Geological Society of America Abstracts with Programs, v. 19, p. 631–632.

———in press, Experimental studies of annealing of etchable U-fission damage in fluorapatite: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta.

Crowley, K.D., Cameron, Maryellen, and McPherson, B.J., 1988, Annealing of etchable fission-track damage in F-, OH-, Cl-, and Sr-apatite—1. Systematics and preliminary interpretations [abs.]: Abstracts, Sixth International Fission Track Dating Workshop, Besançon, France, September 5–9, p. B1–1(O).

Cunningham, C.G., and Barton, P.B., Jr., 1984, Recognition and use of paleothermal anomalies as a new exploration tool [abs.]: Geological Society of America Abstracts with Programs, v. 16, p. 481.

Deer, W.A., Howie, R.A., and Zussman, J., 1962, Rock-forming minerals—V. 5, Non-silicates: New York, John Wiley, 371 p.

Duddy, I.R., and Gleadow, A.J.W., 1982, Thermal history of the Otway Basin, southeastern Australia, from geologic

annealing of fission tracks in detrital volcanic apatites [abs.]: Abstracts, Fission-Track Dating Workshop, Fifth International Conference on Geochronology, Cosmochronology, and Isotope Geology, Nikko National Park, Japan, June 30, p. 13–16.

———1985, The application of fission track thermochronology to sedimentary basins: Two case studies [abs.]: Nuclear Tracks, v. 10, p. 408.

Duddy, I.R., Gleadow, A.J.W., Green, P.F., Hegarty, K.A., Marshallsea, S.A., Tingate, P.R., and Lovering, J.F., 1987, Quantitative estimates of thermal history and maturation using AFTA (apatite fission track analysis) in extensional and foreland basins—Selected case histories [abs.]: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 71, p. 550–551.

Duddy, I.R., Green, P.F., and Laslett, G.M., 1988, Thermal annealing of fission tracks in apatite—3. Variable temperature behaviour: Chemical Geology, v. 73, p. 25–38.

Dumitru, T.A., 1988, Subnormal geothermal gradients in the Great Valley forearc basin, California, during Franciscan subduction: A fission track study: Tectonics, v. 7, p. 1201–1221.

———1989, Constraints on uplift in the Franciscan subduction complex from apatite fission track analysis: Tectonics, v. 8, p. 197–220.

Feinstein, Shimon, Kohn, B.P., and Eyal, Moshe, 1989, Significance of combined vitrinite reflectance and fission-track studies in evaluating thermal history of sedimentary basins: An example from southern Israel, *in* Naeser, N.D., and McCulloh, T.H., eds., Thermal history of sedimentary basins—Methods and case histories: New York, Springer-Verlag, p. 197–216.

Fleischer, R.L., Price, P.B., and Walker, R.M., 1975, Nuclear tracks in solids—Principles and applications: Berkeley, University of California Press, 605 p.

Giegengack, Robert, Omar, G.I., and Johnson, K.R., 1986, A reconnaissance fission track uplift chronology for the northwest margin of the Bighorn Basin: 1986 Montana Geological Society-Yellowstone Bighorn Research Association Field Conference Guidebook, p. 179–184.

Gleadow, A.J.W., and Duddy, I.R., 1981, A natural long-term track annealing experiment for apatite: Nuclear Tracks, v. 5, p. 169–174.

———1984, Fission track dating and thermal history analysis of apatites from wells in the north-west Canning Basin, *in* Purcell, P.G., ed., The Canning Basin: Perth, Geological Society of Australia and Petroleum Exploration Society of Australia, p. 377–387.

Gleadow, A.J.W., Duddy, I.R., Green, P.F., and Hegarty, K.A., 1986a, Fission track lengths in the apatite annealing zone and the interpretation of mixed ages: Earth and Planetary Science Letters, v. 78, p. 245–254.

Gleadow, A.J.W., Duddy, I.R., Green, P.F., and Lovering, J.F., 1986b, Confined fission track lengths in apatite: A diagnostic tool for thermal history analysis: Contributions to Mineralogy and Petrology, v. 94, p. 405–415.

Gleadow, A.J.W., Duddy, I.R., and Lovering, J.F., 1983, Fission track analysis: A new tool for the evaluation of thermal histories and hydrocarbon potential: Australian Petroleum Exploration Association Journal, v. 23, p. 93–102.

Green, P.F., 1988, The relationship between track shortening and fission track age reduction in apatite: Combined influences of inherent instability, annealing anisotropy, length bias and system calibration: Earth and Planetary Science Letters, v. 89, p. 335–352.

Green, P.F., Duddy, I.R., Gleadow, A.J.W., and Lovering, J.F., 1989, Apatite fission-track analysis as a paleotemperature indicator for hydrocarbon exploration, *in* Naeser, N.D., and McCulloh, T.H., eds., Thermal history of sedimentary basins—Methods and case histories: New York, Springer-Verlag, p. 181–195.

Green, P.F., Duddy, I.R., Gleadow, A.J.W., Tingate, P.R., and Laslett, G.M., 1985, Fission-track annealing in apatite: Track length measurements and the form of the Arrhenius plot: Nuclear Tracks, v. 10, p. 323–328.

———1986, Thermal annealing of fission tracks in apatite—1. A qualitative description: Chemical Geology, v. 59, p. 237–253.

Harrison, T.M., Armstrong, R.L., Naeser, C.W., and Harakal, J.E., 1979, Geochronology and thermal history of the Coast Plutonic Complex, near Prince Rupert, British Columbia: Canadian Journal of Earth Sciences, v. 16, p. 400–410.

Hood, A., Gutjahr, C.C.M., and Heacock, R.L., 1975, Organic metamorphism and the generation of petroleum: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 59, p. 986–996.

Hughes, J.M., Cameron, M., and Crowley, K.D., 1988, Annealing of etchable fission-track damage in F-, OH-, Cl-, and Sr-apatite—2. Correlations with crystal structure [abs.]: Abstracts, Sixth International Fission Track Dating Workshop, Besançon, France, September 5–9, p. A1–4(O).

Hurford, A.J., 1986, Cooling and uplift patterns in the Lepontine Alps, South Central Switzerland and an age of vertical movement on the Insubric fault line: Contributions to Mineralogy and Petrology, v. 92, p. 413–427.

Hurford, A.J., Fitch, F.J., and Clarke, A., 1984, Resolution of the age structure of the detrital zircon populations of two Lower Cretaceous sandstones from the Weald of England by fission track dating: Geological Magazine, v. 121, p. 269–277.

Johnson, S.Y., 1984, Stratigraphy, age, and paleogeography of the Eocene Chuckanut Formation, northwest Washington: Canadian Journal of Earth Sciences, v. 21, p. 92–106.

Johnsson, M.J., 1985, Late Paleozoic-Middle Mesozoic uplift rate, cooling rate and geothermal gradient for south-central New York State: Nuclear Tracks, v. 10, p. 295–301.

———1986, Distribution of maximum burial temperatures across northern Appalachian Basin and implications for Carboniferous sedimentation patterns: Geology, v. 14, p. 384–387.

Lakatos, Stephen, and Miller, D.S., 1983, Fission-track analysis of apatite and zircon defines a burial depth of 4 to 7 km for lowermost Upper Devonian, Catskill Mountains, New York: Geology, v. 11, p. 103–104.

Laslett, G.M., Green, P.F., Duddy, I.R., and Gleadow, A.J.W., 1987, Thermal annealing of fission tracks in apatite—2. A quantitative analysis: Chemical Geology, v. 65, p. 1–13.

Märk, E., Pahl, M., Purtscheller, F., and Märk, T.D., 1973, Thermische Ausheilung von Uran-Spaltspuren in Apatiten, Alterskorrekturen und Beitrage zur Geochronologie: Tschermaks Mineralogische und Petrographische Mitteilungen, v. 20, p. 131–154.

Marshallsea, S.J., 1986, Thermal history of the Bowen Basin, Queensland, Australia: An apatite fission track study [abs.]: TERRA cognita, v. 6, p. 118.

Miller, D.S., Duddy, I.R., and Roden, M.K., 1986, Burial and uplift study of northern Appalachian Basin using apatite and zircon fission-track chronology [abs.]: TERRA cognita, v. 6, p. 118.

Naeser, C.W., 1976, Fission track dating: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 76–190, 65 p.

———1979a, Fission-track dating and geologic annealing of fission tracks, *in* Jäger, E., and Hunziker, J.C., eds., Lectures in isotope geology: New York, Springer-Verlag, p. 154–169.

———1979b, Thermal history of sedimentary basins: Fission-track dating of subsurface rocks, *in* Scholle, P.A., and Schluger, P.R., eds., Aspects of diagenesis: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Special Publication 26, p. 109–112.

———1981, The fading of fission tracks in the geologic environment—Data from deep drill holes [abs.]: Nuclear Tracks, v. 5, p. 248–250.

Naeser, C.W., and Cunningham, C.G., 1984, Age and paleothermal anomaly of the Eagle Mine ore body, Gilman district, Colorado [abs.]: Geological Society of America Abstracts with Programs, v. 16, p. 607.

Naeser, C.W., Cunningham, C.G., Marvin, R.F., and Obradovich, J.D., 1980, Pliocene intrusive rocks and mineralization near Rico, Colorado: Economic Geology, v. 75, p. 122–127.

Naeser, C.W., and Faul, Henry, 1969, Fission track annealing in apatite and sphene: Journal of Geophysical Research, v. 74, p. 705–710.

Naeser, C.W., and Naeser, N.D., 1988, Fission-track dating of Quaternary events, *in* Easterbrook, D.J., ed., Dating Quaternary sediments: Geological Society of America Special Paper 227, p. 1–11.

Naeser, N.D., 1984, Thermal history determined by fission-track dating for three sedimentary basins in California and Wyoming [abs.]: Geological Society of America Abstracts with Programs, v. 16, p. 607.

———1986, Neogene thermal history of the northern Green River basin, Wyoming—Evidence from fission-track dating, *in* Gautier, D.L., ed., Roles of organic matter in sediment diagenesis: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Special Publication 38, p. 65–72.

———in press, Thermal history and provenance of rocks in the Wagon Wheel no. 1 well, Pinedale anticline, northwestern Green River basin—Evidence from fission-track dating, *in* Law, B.E., and Spencer, C.W., eds., Geology of tight gas reservoirs in the Pinedale anticline, Wyoming, and at the Multiwell Experiment site, Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1886.

Naeser, N.D., McCulloh, T.H., Crowley, K.D., and Reaves, C.M., 1989a, Fission-track analysis as a thermal-history indicator: Los Angeles Basin, California [abs.]: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 73, p. 1168.

Naeser, N.D., Naeser, C.W., and McCulloh, T.H., 1989b, The application of fission-track dating to the depositional and thermal history of rocks in sedimentary basins, *in* Naeser, N.D., and McCulloh, T.H., eds., Thermal history of sedimentary basins—Methods and case histories: New York, Springer-Verlag, p. 157–180.

———in press, Thermal history of rocks in the southern San Joaquin Valley, California: Evidence from fission-track analysis: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin.

Naeser, N.D., Reaves, C.M., and McCulloh, T.H., 1987a, Extreme high temperature burial annealing of apatite fission tracks, Santa Fe Springs oil field, California [abs.]: Geological Society of America Abstracts with Programs, v. 19, p. 784.

Naeser, N.D., Zeitler, P.K., Naeser, C.W., and Cerveny, P.F., 1987b, Provenance studies by fission-track dating of zircon—Etching and counting procedures: Nuclear Tracks, v. 13, p. 121–126.

Waples, D.W., 1980, Time and temperature in petroleum formation: Application of Lopatin's method to petroleum exploration: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 64, p. 916–926.

Yim, W.W.-S., Gleadow, A.J.W., and van Moort, J.C., 1985, Fission track dating of alluvial zircons and heavy mineral provenance in Northeast Tasmania: Journal of the Geological Society of London, v. 142, p. 351–356.

Zeitler, P.K., 1985, Closure temperature implications of concordant $^{40}Ar/^{39}Ar$ potassium feldspar and zircon fission-track ages from high-grade terranes [abs.]: Nuclear Tracks, v. 10, p. 441–442.

Zeitler, P.K., Johnson, N.M., Briggs, N.D., and Naeser, C.W., 1982, Uplift history of the NW Himalaya as recorded by fission-track ages on detrital Siwalik zircons [abs.]: Abstracts, Symposium on Mesozoic and Cenozoic Geology (60th Anniversary Symposium, Geological Society of China), Beidaihe, China, 1982, p. 108–109.

———1986, Uplift history of the NW Himalaya as recorded by fission-track ages on detrital Siwalik zircons, *in* Jiqing, H., ed., Proceedings of the Symposium on Mesozoic and Cenozoic Geology: Beijing, China, Geological Publishing House, p. 481–494.

Zimmermann, R.A., and Gaines, A.M., 1978, A new approach to the study of fission track fading, *in* Zartman, R.E., ed., Short papers of the Fourth International Conference on Geochronology, Cosmochronology, and Isotope Geology: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 78–701, p. 467–468.

Geothermics Applied to the Reconstruction of Subsurface Temperatures

By Charles E. Barker[1]

INTRODUCTION

Determination of accurate subsurface temperatures is a crucial element of petroleum geology. Yet accurate measurement has proven to be an imprecise, error-prone procedure whether in the simpler case of present-day formation temperature, or the more difficult evaluation of paleotemperature. This paper overviews methods of determining both modern and ancient subsurface temperatures. The treatment is not comprehensive, and emphasizes the most recent literature and techniques that I have found useful. Only relevant summary papers are cited in the text. The methodology discussion is supplemented by an extended bibliography. If the subject of the reference is not sufficiently clear in the title, the citation is annotated.

CORRECTION OF TEMPERATURE MEASUREMENTS

Direct determination of accurate present-day formation temperature in wells requires thermal equilibrium before measurement. A rule of thumb is that it requires about the same amount of time for a well to recover from drilling fluid circulation effects as it took to drill the well (Bullard, 1947). However, usually this length of reequilibration time is not available before a bottom hole temperature (BHT) is measured, usually within a few hours of drilling. Most BHT's do not represent true (equilibrium) formation temperature and the measurement must be corrected.

Statistical Correction Methods

The information necessary to calculate a correction to logged temperature to equilibrium formation temperature is often not included, or is inaccurate, in the well logging reports (Carstens and Finstad, 1981; Catala, 1984). Thus, accurate correction of BHT is difficult. For all of the uncertainty in determining the true formation temperature, it is reasonable to make a BHT correction because we do know that equilibrium formation temperature is higher than an unequilibrated BHT. The simplest correction is to compile producing well temperatures (or drill stem test information) and the corresponding BHT at reservoir depth for computation of a correction curve. The correction is made by adding the difference between the higher formation temperature and the lower BHT data calculated at the bottom hole depth. The quality of correction improves with the type of data available, with the best case being careful measurements repeated over time until temperature no longer changes. A widely used statistical correction is the AAPG method (AAPG, 1976; see also Scott, 1982). The AAPG correction was developed in and applied to wide geographic areas and has proved inaccurate in parts of some basins. The statistical approach, in general, is imprecise as shown by a wide data scatter about the correction curve generated for a single basin (for example, Chueng, 1979). Although imprecise, the statistical method in many cases is the only correction possible.

Empirical Correction Methods

Commonly used empirical techniques are (1) the Horner plot (limits of application in Dowdle and Cobb, 1975, and (2) the Middleton (1979) curve-matching method. Leblanc and others (1982) suggested use of the Horner plot when the mud equilibration time to the BHT measurement is known, and the curve-matching technique when it is not known.

Present Temperature-Depth Reconstruction

A geothermal gradient is calculated by interpolation using mean annual surface temperature to the depth of the corrected BHT. This linear approximation can be highly inaccurate because the vertical and lateral temperature profile can change with lithology (thermal conductivity), different fluids filling the pores, subsurface fluid flow, and so forth. This constructed geothermal gradient gives no information about paleotemperature. Many workers assume, in the absence of compelling information to the contrary, that present measurements can be extended into the past. Such an assumption often cannot be contradicted with other geologic information, and it is a useful first approximation.

[1]U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.

In the absence of detailed paleotemperature evidence, the calculated geothermal gradient is often assumed to remain constant without regard to temporal heat-flow variation and diagenesis (primarily porosity loss) or change in lithology. Thus, a detailed geologic analysis is unfortunately reduced to time-temperature data by simplification of the geothermal gradient into a linear form and ignoring its possible temporal change. However, gaps in the geologic record, and the data quality and quantity available, often will not permit a more sophisticated approach. An accurate time-temperature determination is crucial to Lopatin thermal maturity (TTI) estimates because it is sensitive to small changes in subsurface temperature; an increase of just 10 °C increases TTI by 100 percent.

THERMAL HISTORY RECONSTRUCTION

Paleotemperature reconstruction requires geologic data to document the temporal change in (1) the values of geothermal gradient, surface temperature, and burial depth history or (2) heat flow and thermal conductivity. These data are difficult to reconstruct because the temperature regime has often changed, and burial history may be altered or obliterated by compaction, erosion, and structural complexities. Further, present-day measurements should be calculated to a decompacted value. For example, thermal conductivity is dependent in part on the porosity and the fluid filling it. So contemporary thermal conductivity measurements must be adjusted (lowered) to the former (higher) levels of porosity (Lewis and Rose, 1970) and must consider in some cases the displacement of pore water by oil and(or) gas.

A paleosurface temperature is required to estimate subsurface temperature if only a paleogeothermal gradient is available. Surface temperature estimates can be made using four methods: (1) fossil evidence for paleoclimate (Savin, 1977); (2) reconstruction of paleolatitude by use of continental drift models (Weijermars, 1989; Dagger, 1989) and present models of broad latitudinal and elevation control of mean surface temperature[2]; (3) contemporary measurements before apparent perturbation by the greenhouse effect (Darton, 1913); and (4) average near-surface water temperature (Blakey, 1966).

[2]The present surface temperature of the Earth as a function of north or south latitude (lat) is $T=27.6-(0.04\ lat)-(0.006\ lat^2)$ ($r^2=0.99$; computed using data from the U.S. Weather Bureau). Note that the average global temperature is now 15 °C, but in the past has decreased to as low as 10 °C in the coldest glacial periods and has been as high as 22 °C, so this function must be carefully applied. Also, an elevation correction may have to be applied.

Burial Depth History

Burial depth reconstruction is usually based on a simple layer-cake concept of sediment accumulation. Another approach is to model the rate of sedimentation through time. Burial curves should be corrected for compaction (Perrier and Quiblier, 1974) to improve accuracy in paleodepth assessment. Paleotemperature history is computed using burial depth through time and the estimated geothermal gradients (Waples, 1985).

Erosion Estimates

The simplest method for determining depth of erosion is by stratigraphic projection of formation thickness from a related uneroded section to the eroded one, or measure the sediment thickness eroded from the crest of folded beds (see discussion in Magara, 1986). Geologic or geochemical parameters that vary regularly with depth and do not significantly change during exhumation can also indicate depth of erosion (gradient method). For example, using thermal maturation data, the slope and intercept of the vitrinite reflectance-depth profile are measured. A semilogarithmic plot of vitrinite reflectance and depth straightens the maturation curve projection to the vitrinite reflectance estimate at the pre-existing ground surface (Dow, 1977). Projecting the regression curve to a paleosurface vitrinite reflectance value of 0.2 percent indicates an eroded thickness in good agreement with other geologic data (Nuccio and Barker, 1989). The gradient method must be modified to work thermal maturity data across with buried erosional surfaces (Katz and others, 1988).

Thermal History Reconstruction

Once surface temperature, paleodepth, and paleotemperature estimates are reconstructed, a geothermal gradient is calculated by a procedure similar to that used with BHT data. As for present-day temperature data, linear interpolation in a heterogeneous sediment pile makes many assumptions that are not very robust, but often it is the only method available. The thermal history (temperature at some point as a function of geologic time) is calculated by using paleogeothermal gradients reconstructed for each time period and calculating temperature based on surface temperature and paleodepth from the depth-time curve.

Paleotemperature from Thermal Conductivity and Heat Flow

Fourier's law states that the heat flow is directly proportional to thermal conductivity of the strata and the geothermal gradient. The temperature at the bottom of a sediment package is determined by using Fourier's law

relating the temperature at the top of the unit (initially the average surface temperature), its thermal conductivity, and local terrestrial heat flow[3] (Gretener, 1981; Buntebarth, 1984). A modification of this technique is the thermal resistance (Bullard) method of computing subsurface temperature (Andrews-Speed and others, 1984). Contemporary terrestrial heat-flow measurements throughout the world are available from regional contour maps. The thermal conductivity of a rock unit is estimated using a weighted average proportioned to the abundance and thermal conductivity of each lithology present (as suggested by Reiter and Tovar, 1982). An important consideration in the thermal conductivity computation, because it is a bulk property, is the porosity and pore fluid composition. For example, experiments by Woodside and Messmer (1961) and theoretical modeling (Lewis and Rose, 1970; Buntebarth, 1984) show that filling pores with oil and(or) gas can cause major reduction of bulk-rock thermal conductivity.

Direct Geothermometry

Geothermometers based on inorganic materials (fluid inclusions, diagenetic mineral assemblages, illite crystallinity, isotopes, and so forth) and organic matter (rank indices of kerogen or coal) have been calibrated to burial temperature (Frey, 1987). The limitation of these geothermometers is that the thermal history must be recorded in the rocks. Thermal events can be difficult to record in sedimentary systems because of the slowness of low-temperature equilibration reactions. The short-term nature of some thermal events may also preclude them from leaving an imprint on the rock. These problems notwithstanding, direct geothermometry has proved to be a useful tool in subsurface paleotemperature studies.

DISCUSSION

Thermal history reconstructions are often fragile interpretations of geologic semi-fact, because they are based on many assumptions and extrapolations (the proverbial house of cards). The validity of these reconstructions should be evaluated on a case by case basis. The best check is to make both direct and indirect estimates of the thermal history using all possible methods and data.

[3]Conversion factors: Geothermal gradient: °C/km=18.23 °F/100 ft. Heat Flow: HFU=1 microcal/cm^2-s=41.8 mW/m^2. Thermal conductivity: W/m-°C=2.4 mcal/cm-s-°C.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Thermal History Reconstruction

Buntebarth, G., 1984, Geothermics: New York, Springer-Verlag, 144 p.

Buntebarth, G., and Stegena, L., 1986, eds., Paleogeothermics: New York, Springer-Verlag, 234 p.

Bustin, R.M., Cameron, A.R., Grieve, D.A., and Kalkreuth, W.D., 1983, Coal petrology, its principles, methods and applications: Geological Society of Canada, Short Course Notes, v. 3, 230 p.

Frey, M., ed., 1987, Low temperature metamorphism: Glasgow, Blackie and Son, 351 p.

Gretener, P.E., 1981, Geothermics: Using temperature in hydrocarbon exploration: American Association of Petroleum Geologists, Education Course Notes 17, 156 p.

Kappelmeyer, O. and Haenel, R., 1974, Geothermics with special reference to application: Berlin, Gebruder Borntraeger, 238 p.

North, F.K., 1985, Petroleum geology: London, Allen and Unwin, 607 p.

Robert, 1988, Organic metamorphism and geothermal history: Dordrecht, Neth., Reidel, 311 p.

Stach, E., Mackowsky, M.-Th., Teichmuller, M., Taylor, G.H., Chandra, D., and Teichmuller, R., 1982, Stach's textbook of coal petrology (3d ed.): Berlin, Gebrüder Borntraeger, 535 p.

Tissot, B.P., and Welte, D.H., 1984, Petroleum formation and occurrence, 2d ed.: New York, Springer-Verlag, 699 p.

Turcotte, D. L., and Schuburt, G., 1982, Geodynamics: applications of continuum physics to geological problems: New York, Wiley, 450 p.

Surface Temperature

Berry, G.W., Grim, P.J., and Ikelman, J.A., 1980, Thermal springs list for the United States: National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration Key to Geophysical Records Documentation no. 12, 59 p.

Blakey, J.F., 1966, Temperature of surface waters in the conterminous United States: U.S. Geological Survey, Hydrologic Investigations Atlas HA-235.

Dagger, G.W., 1989, Driftmap—A continental drift program in Pascal: Computers and Geoscience, v. 15, p. 371–393.

Darton, N.H., 1913, Geothermal data of the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 701, 97 p.

Savin, S.M., 1977, The history of the Earth's surface temperature during the past 100 million years: Annual Reviews of Earth and Planetary Sciences, v. 5, p. 319–355.

———1984, The history of the Earth's surface temperature, *in* Durand, B., ed., Thermal phenomena in sedimentary basins. Paris, Editions Technip, p. 11–19.

Waring, G.A., 1965, Thermal springs of the United States and other countries of the World: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 492, 383 p.

Weijermars, R., 1989, Global tectonics since the breakup of Pangea 180 million years ago: Evolution maps and lithospheric budget: Earth Science Reviews, v. 26, p. 113–162.

Geothermal Gradient Data—North America

AAPG (American Association of Petroleum Geologists), 1976, Basic data file from AAPG geothermal survey of North America: Norman, University of Oklahoma,

Guffanti, M., and Nathenson, M., 1980, Preliminary temperature-gradient map of the conterminous United States: Geothermal Resources Council Transactions, v. 4, p. 53–59.

Kinney, D.M., ed., 1976, Geothermal gradient map of North America: American Association of Petroleum Geologists and United States Geological Survey, scale 1:5,000,000, 2 sheets.

Kron, A., and Stix, J., 1982, Geothermal gradient map of the United States: National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Geophysical Data Center, 2 sheets, 1:2,500,000. [For many localities the heat flow and thermal conductivities are listed.]

Moses, P.L., Geothermal gradients, *in* Drilling and production practice: Washington, D.C., American Petroleum Institute, p. 57–63.

Spicer, H.C., 1964, A compilation of deep Earth temperature data: USA 1910–1945: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 64–147.

Van Orstrand, C.E., 1935, Normal geothermal gradient in United States: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 19, p. 78–115.

Geothermal Gradient Data—World

Van Orstrand, C.E., 1961, Observed temperatures in the Earth's crust, *in* Gutenberg, B., ed., Internal constitution of the earth: New York, Dover, p. 107–149.

Thermal Conductivity

Anand, J., Somerton, W.H., and Gomaa, E., 1973, Predicting thermal conductivities of formations from other known properties: Society of Petroleum Engineers Journal, v. 13, p. 267–273.

Assad, Y., 1955, A study of the thermal conductivity of fluid-bearing porous rocks: Berkeley, University of California, Ph.D. Dissertation, 71 p.

Blackwell, D.D., and Steele, J.L., 1989, Thermal conductivity of sedimentary rocks, *in* Naeser, N.D., and McCulloh, T.H., eds., Thermal history of sedimentary basins: New York, Springer-Verlag, p. 13–36.

Clark, S.P., 1966, Thermal conductivity, *in* Clark, S.P., ed., Handbook of physical constants: Geological Society of America Memoir 97, Chapter 21, p. 459–483.

Horai, K., and Uyeda, S., 1960, Studies of the Earth. The fifth paper: Relation between thermal conductivity of sedimentary rocks and water content: Bulletin of the Earthquake Research Institute, v. 38, p. 199–206.

Houbolt, J.J.H.C., and Wells, P.R.A., 1980, Estimation of heat flow in oil wells based on a relation between heat conductivity and sound velocity: Geologie en Mijnbouw, v. 59, p. 215–224.

Huang, J.H., 1971, Effective thermal conductivity of porous rocks: Journal of Geophysical Research, v. 76, p. 6420–6427.

Hutt, J.R., and Berg, J.W., 1968, Thermal and electrical conductivities of sandstone rocks and ocean sediments: Geophysics, v. 33, p. 489–500.

Kunii, D., and Smith, J.M., 1961, Thermal conductivities of porous rocks filled with stagnant fluid: Society of Petroleum Engineers Journal, v. 1, p. 37–42.

Lewis, C.R., and Rose, S.C., 1970, A theory relating high temperatures and overpressures: Journal of Petroleum Technology, v. 22, p. 11–16.

Robertson, E.C., 1979, Thermal conductivity of rocks: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 79–356, 31 p.

Roy, R.F., Beck, A.E., and Touloukian, Y.S., 1981, Thermophysical properties of rocks, *in* Touloukian, Y.S., Judd, W.R., and Roy, R.F., eds., Physical properties of rocks and minerals, v. II-2: New York, McGraw-Hill, p. 409–502.

Sass, J.H., Lachenbruch, A.H., and Munroe, R.J., 1971, Thermal conductivity of rocks from measurements on fragments and its application to heat-flow determinations: Journal of Geophysical Research, v. 76, p. 3391–3401.

Sugawara, A., and Yoshizawa, Y., 1962, An experimental investigation on the thermal conductivity of consolidated porous materials: Journal of Applied Physics, v. 33, p. 3135–3138.

Woodside, W., and Messmer, J.H., 1961, Thermal conductivity of porous media. II. Consolidated rocks: Journal of Applied Physics, v. 32, p. 1699–1706.

Zierfuss, H., 1969, Heat conductivity of some carbonate rocks and clayey sandstones: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 53, p. 251–260.

Paleoporosity Prediction

Schmoker, J.W., 1984, Empirical relation between carbonate porosity and thermal maturity: An approach to regional porosity prediction: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 68, p. 1697–1703. [See also the references contained within.]

Schmoker, J.W., and Gautier, D.L., 1988, Sandstone porosity as a function of thermal maturity: Geology, v. 16, p. 1007–1010. [See also the references contained within.]

Heat Flow Data—United States

Blackwell, D.D., 1969, Heat flow in the northwestern United States: Journal of Geophysical Research, v. 74, p. 992–1007.

Combs, J., and Simmons, G., 1973, Terrestrial heat flow determinations in north-central United States: Journal of Geophysical Research, v. 78, p. 441–461.

Decker, E.R., and others, 1988, Significance of past and recent heat-flow and radioactivity studies in the southern Rocky Mountains region: Geological Society of America Bulletin, v. 100, p. 1851–1885.

Reiter, M., Mansure, A.J., and Shearer, C., 1979, Geothermal characteristics of the Colorado Plateau: Tectonophysics, v. 61, p. 183–195.

Reiter, M., and Tovar, J.C., 1982, Estimates of terrestrial heat flow in northern Chihuahua, Mexico, based upon petroleum bottom-hole temperatures: Geological Society of America Bulletin, v. 93, p. 613–624.

Sass, and others, 1980, Heat flow from the crust of the United States, *in* Touloukian, Y.S., Judd, W.R., and Roy, R.F., eds., Physical properties of rocks and minerals, v. II-2: New York, McGraw-Hill, p. 503–548.

Sass, J.H., and Munroe, R.J., 1974, Basic heat flow data from the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 74–9.

Heat Flow Data—World

Chapman, D.S., and Pollock, H.N., 1974, Global heat flow: A new look: Earth and Planetary Science Letters, v. 28, p. 28–32. [Summarizes sources of heat flow maps.]

Cermak, V., and Rybach, L., eds., 1979, Terrestrial heat flow in Europe: Berlin, Springer-Verlag, 328 p.

Danis, M., 1985, Simple evaluation of heat flow in sedimentary basins: Comparison and discussion: Revue de l'Institut Francais Pétrole, v. 40, p. 300–320 [in French]. [Discusses a simple method of estimating heat flow from the water-well discharge temperature.]

Lysak, S.V., 1987, Terrestrial heat flow of continental rifts: Tectonophysics, v. 143, p. 31–41.

Vitorello, I., and Pollack, H.N., 1980, On the variation of continental heat flow with age and the thermal evolution of continents: Journal of Geophysical Research, v. 85, p. 983–995.

Subsurface Temperature from Heat-Flow Theory

Andrews-Speed, C.P., Oxburgh, E.R., and Cooper, B.A., 1984, Temperatures and depth-dependent heat flow in western North Sea: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 68, p. 1764–1781.

Buntebarth, G., 1984, Geothermics: New York, Springer-Verlag, 144 p. [See also the references contained within.]

Carslaw, H.S., and Jaeger, J.C., 1959, Conduction of heat in solids: Oxford, Oxford University Press.

Jaeger, J.C., 1964, Thermal effects of intrusions: Reviews of Geophysics, v. 2, p. 443–466.

Nisbet, E.G., and Fowler, C.M.R., 1982, The thermal background to metamorphism—1. Simple one-dimensional conductive models: Geoscience Canada, v. 9, p. 161–164.

Norton, D., and Cathles, L.M., 1979, Thermal aspects of ore deposition, *in* Barnes, H.L., ed., Geochemistry of hydrothermal ore deposits, 2d ed.: New York, Wiley, p. 611–631.

Correction of BHT data

AAPG (American Association of Petroleum Geologists), 1976, Basic data file from AAPG geothermal survey of North America: Norman, University of Oklahoma.

Albright, J., 1976, A new and more accurate method for the direct measurement of earth temperature gradient in deep boreholes: Proceedings, Second United Nations Symposium on the Development and Use of Geothermal Resources, v. 2, p. 847–851.

Barelli, A., and Palama, A., 1981, A new method for evaluating formation equilibrium temperature in holes during drilling: Geothermics, v. 10, p. 95–102.

Bullard, E.C., 1947, The time necessary for a borehole to attain temperature equilibrium: Monthly Notices, Royal Astronomical Society, v. 5, p. 127–130.

Carstens, H., and Finstad, K.G., 1981, Geothermal gradients of the northern North Sea basin, 59–62°N, *in* Illing, L.V., and Hobson, G.D., ed., Petroleum geology of the continental shelf of north-west Europe: London, Institute of Petroleum, p. 152–161. [Extensive discussion of errors in BHT measurement and their correction.]

Catala, G., 1984, Technical aspects of measurements of temperatures in boreholes—Some aspects of their interpretation, *in* Durand, B., Thermal phenomena in sedimentary basins: Paris, Editions Technip, p. 37–46.

Chueng, P.K., 1979, Geothermal gradient mapping—Oklahoma: Canadian Well Logging Society, Transactions, 7th Formation Evaluation Symposium, p. 1–5.

Closman, P.J., Jones, E.R., and Vogel, E.A., 1979, Effect of heat-conducting well casing on temperature distribution in an observation well: Journal of Energy Resources Technology, v. 101, p. 20–27. [In general, after about three months, error in temperature measurement due to this effect are negligible.]

Cooper, L.R., and Jones, C., 1959, The determination of virgin strata temperatures from observations in deep survey boreholes: Journal of Geophysics, v. 2, p. 116–131.

Da-Xin, L., 1986, Non-linear fitting method of finding equilibrium temperature from BHT data: Geothermics, v. 15, p. 657–664.

Dowdle, W.L., and Cobb, W.M., 1975, Static formation temperature from well logs—An empirical method: Journal of Petroleum Technology, v. 27, p. 1326–1330.

Drury, M.J., 1984, On a possible source of error in extracting equilibrium formation temperatures from borehole BHT data: Geothermics, v. 13, p. 175–180.

Edwardson, M.J., and others, 1962, Calculation of formation temperature disturbance caused by mud circulation: Journal of Petroleum Technology, v. 14, p. 416–426.

Holmes, C.S., and Swift, S.C., 1970, Calculation of circulating mud temperatures: Journal of Petroleum Technology, v. 22, p. 670–674.

Kehle, R.O., Schoeppel, R.J., and Deford, R.K., 1970, The AAPG geothermal survey of North America: Geothermics, v. 2, p. 358–367.

Jaeger, J.C., 1961, The effect of the drilling fluid on temperatures measured in bore holes: Journal of Geophysical Research, v. 66, p. 563–569.

Lachenbruch, A.H., and Brewer, M.C., 1959, Dissipation of the temperature effect of drilling a well in Arctic Alaska: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1083-C, p. 73–109.

Leblanc, Y., Lam, H.L., Pascoe, L.J., and Jones, F.W., 1982, A comparison of two methods of estimating static formation temperature from well logs: Geophysical Prospecting, v. 30, p. 348–357.

Lee, T.C., 1982, Estimation of formation temperature and thermal property from dissipation of heat generated by drilling: Geophysics, v. 47, p. 1577–1584.

Mansure, A.J., and Reiter, M., 1979, A vertical groundwater movement correction for heat flow: Journal of Geophysical Research, v. 84, p. 3490–3496.

McCulloh, T.H., and Beyer, L.A., 1979, Geothermal gradients, *in* Cook, H.E., ed., Geologic studies of the Point Con-

ception deep Stratigraphic Test Well OCS-CAL 78–164 no. 1 outer continental shelf, southern California, United States: U.S. Geological Survey Open File Report 79–1218, p. 43–48.

Middleton, M.F., 1979, A model for bottom-hole temperature stabilization: Geophysics, v. 44, p. 1458–1462.

———1982, Bottom-hole temperature stabilization with continued circulation of drilling mud: Geophysics, v. 47, p, 1716–1723.

Oxburgh, E.R., and others, 1972, Equilibrium bore hole temperatures from observation of thermal transients during drilling: Earth and Planetary Science Letters, v. 14, p. 47–49.

Perrier, J., and Raiga-Clemenceau, J., 1984, Temperature measurements in boreholes, *in* Durand, B., Thermal phenomena in sedimentary basins: Paris, Editions Technip, p. 47–55.

Raymond, L.R., 1969, Temperature distribution in a circulating drilling fluid: Journal of Petroleum Technology, v. 21, p. 333–341.

Sammel, E.A., 1968, Convective flow and its effect on temperature logging in small diameter wells: Geophysics, v. 33, p. 1004–1012.

Scott, G.N., 1982, Temperature equilibration in boreholes: A statistical approach: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, M.S. Thesis, 63 p.

Stegena, L., and Dovenyi, P., 1983, Procedure to correct measured temperatures and temperature gradients for geological effects: Zentralblatt fur Geologie und Palaontologie, v. 1, p. 25–34. [The geological effects they deal with are perturbations of the temperature by uplift, subsidence, climatic change, erosion, and so on.]

Tanaka, T., and Satoh, K., 1977, Estimation of subsurface temperature in oil and gas producing area, northeast Japan: Journal of the Japanese Association of Petroleum Technology, v. 42, p. 229–237.

Fluid Flow and Subsurface Temperature Variation

Bachu, S., 1985, Influence of lithology and fluid flow on the temperature distribution in a sedimentary basin: Tectonophysics, v. 120, p. 257–284.

Bredehoeft, J.D., and Popadopolous, I.S., 1965, Rates of vertical groundwater movement estimated from the earth's thermal profile: Water Resources Research, v. 1, p. 325–328.

Drury, M.J., Jessop, A.M. and Lewis, T.J., 1984, The detection of groundwater flow by precise temperature measurements in boreholes: Geothermics, v. 13, p. 163–174.

Majorowicz, J.A., Jones, F.W., Lam, H.L., and Jessop, A.M., 1985, Terrestrial heat flow and geothermal gradients in relation to hydrodynamics: Journal of Geodynamics, v. 4, p. 265–283.

Smith, L., and Chapman, O.S., 1983, On the thermal effects of groundwater flow, 1. Regional scale systems: Journal of Geophysical Research, v. 88, p. 593–608.

Sorey, M.L., 1971, Measurement of vertical groundwater velocity from temperature profiles in wells: Water Resources Research, v. 7, p. 963–970.

Direct Geothermometry

Barker, C.E., Crysdale, B.L., and Pawlewicz, M.J., 1986, The relationship between vitrinite reflectance, metamorphic grade and temperature in the Cerro Prieto, Salton Sea, and East Mesa Geothermal Systems, Salton Trough, United States and Mexico: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1578, p. 83–95.

Barker, C.E., and Goldstein, R.H., in press, A fluid inclusion technique for determining maximum temperature and its application to establish a refined calibration for the vitrinite reflectance geothermometer: Geology.

Barker, C.E., and Pawlewicz, M.J., 1986, The correlation of vitrinite reflectance with maximum temperature in humic organic matter, *in* Buntebarth, Gunther, and Stegena, L., eds., Paleogeothermics: New York, Springer-Verlag, p. 79–93. [Proposed calibration of vitrinite reflectance and maximum temperature for sedimentary rocks.

Bostick, N.H., 1971, Thermal alteration of clastic organic particles as an indicator of contact and burial metamorphism in sedimentary rocks: Geoscience and Man, v. 3, p. 83–93.

Burruss, R.C., 1987, Diagenetic palaeotemperatures from aqueous fluid inclusions: Re-equilibration of inclusions in carbonate cements by burial heating. Mineralogical Magazine, v. 51, p. 477–481.

Gleadow, A.J.W., Duddy, I.R., and Lovering, J.F., 1983, Fission track analysis; A new tool for the evaluation of thermal histories and hydrocarbon potential: Australian Petroleum Exploration Association Journal, v. 23, p. 93–102.

Goldstein, R.H., 1986, Reequilibration of fluid inclusions in low-temperature calcium-carbonate cement: Geology, v. 14, p. 792–795.

Hoffman, J., and Hower, J., 1979, Clay mineral assemblages as low grade metamorphic indicators: Application to the thrust faulted disturbed belt of Montana, U.S.A., *in* Scholle, P.A., and Schluger, P.K., eds., Aspects of diagenesis: Society of Economic Paleontologist and Mineralogist Special Publication 26, p. 55–79. [General correlation of burial temperature with clay mineral assemblage.]

Hollister, L.S., and Crawford, M.L., eds., 1981, Short course in fluid inclusions: Applications to petrology: Mineralogical Association of Canada Short Course Handbook 6, 304 p.

Hood, A., Gutjahr, C.C.C., and Heacock, R.L., 1975, Organic metamorphism and the generation of petroleum: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 59, p. 986–996.

Hunt, J.M., 1979, Petroleum geochemistry and geology: San Francisco, Freeman, 617 p.

Kharaka, Y.K. and Mariner, R.H., 1989, Chemical geothermometers and their application to formation waters from sedimentary basins, *in* Naeser, N.D., and McCulloch, T., eds., Thermal history of basins—Methods and case histories: Berlin, Springer-Verlag, p. 99–118.

Kisch, H. J., 1987, Correlation of between indicators of very-low-grade metamorphism, *in* Frey, M., ed., Low temperature metamorphism: Glasgow, Blackie and Son.

MacKenzie, A.S., and McKenzie, D., 1983, Isomerization and aromatization of hydrocarbons in sedimentary basins

formed by extension: Geological Magazine, v. 120, p. 417–528.

Naeser, N.D., and McCulloch, T., eds., 1989, Thermal history of basins—Methods and case histories: Berlin, Springer-Verlag, 319 p.

Prezbindowski, D.R., and Larese R.E., 1987, Experimental stretching of fluid inclusions in calcite—Implications for diagenetic studies: Geology, v. 15, p. 333–336.

Price, L.C., 1983, Geologic time as a parameter in organic metamorphism and vitrinite reflectance as an absolute paleogeothermometer: Journal of Petroleum Geology, v. 6, p. 5–38.

Roedder, E., 1984, Fluid inclusions: Mineralogical Society of America, Reviews in Mineralogy, v. 12, 644 p. [A source book for the fluid inclusion geothermometry technique.]

Savin, S.M., and Lee, M., 1984, Estimation of subsurface temperatures from oxygen isotope ratios of minerals, *in* Durand, B., ed., Thermal phenomena in sedimentary basins: Paris, Editions Technip, p. 65–70.

Scholle, P.A., and Schluger, P.R., eds., Aspects of diagenesis: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Special Publication 26, 443 p. [Contains many papers on geothermometric techniques used in sedimentary basins.]

Waples, D.W., 1984, Thermal models for oil generation, *in* Brooks, J., and Welte, D., eds., Advances in petroleum geochemistry, v. 1: London, Academic Press, p. 7–67. [Review of thermal models employed in paleotemperature reconstruction.]

Burial Depth/Erosion Reconstruction

Dow, W.G., 1977, Kerogen studies and geological interpretations: Journal of Geochemical Exploration, v. 7, p. 79–99.

England, P.C., and Richardson, S.W., 1977, The influence of erosion upon the mineral facies of rocks from different metamorphic environments: Journal of the Geological Society of London, v. 134, p. 201–213.

Katz, B.J., Pheifer, R.N., and Schunk, D.J., 1988, Interpretation of discontinuous vitrinite reflectance profiles: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 72, p. 926–931.

Magara, K., 1986, Geological models of petroleum entrapment: London, Elsevier, 328 p. [Useful discussion of applied geothermometry and burial history reconstruction.]

Middleton, M.F., 1984, Seismic geohistory analysis—A case history from the Canning basin, western Australia: Geophysics, v. 49, p. 333–343.

Nuccio, V.F., and Barker, C.E., 1989, Application of thermal maturation studies to energy exploration: American Association of Petroleum Geologists, Rocky Mountain Section, Transactions, p. 111–120.

Perrier, R., and Quiblier, J., 1974, Thickness change in sedimentary layers during compaction history: Methods for quantitative evaluation: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 58, p. 507–520.

Turcotte, D.L., and Ahern, J.L., 1977, On the thermal and subsidence history of basins: Journal of Geophysical Research, v. 82, p. 3762–3766.

Vugrinovich, R., 1988, Shale compaction in the Michigan basin: Estimates of former depth of burial and implications for paleogeothermal gradients: Bulletin of Canadian Petroleum Geology, v. 36, p. 1–8.

Waples, D.W., 1985, Geochemistry in petroleum exploration: Boston, International Human Resources Development Corporation, 232 p.

Yamaji, A., and Takahashi, M., 1988, Estimation of relative depth of burial using vitrinite reflectance: Implications for sedimentary basin formation by basement tilting: International Journal of Coal Geology, v. 10, p. 41–50.

Role of Kinetic Modeling in Petroleum Exploration

By Jerry L. Clayton[1]

Although a few investigators have suggested that petroleum may be derived from abiological sources (Gold and Sofer, 1980; Porfir'ev, 1974), the present consensus view is that petroleum originates from thermal transformation of organic matter contained in sedimentary rocks. Some of the organic-solvent-soluble components (bitumen, lipids) contained in sedimentary organic matter may undergo only minor diagenetic alteration during burial heating, but most of the organic matter deposited in fine-grained rocks is contained in the high-molecular-weight insoluble fraction (kerogen). Kerogen decomposes during burial heating over geologic time to generate petroleum. Petroleum generated by this process consists mostly of products from the thermal transformation of kerogen with secondary amounts of lipid materials inherited directly from sedimentary organic matter without going through the kerogen intermediate step.

The main role of kinetic modeling in exploration is to reduce risk by predicting how much oil or gas has been generated in a play where direct geochemical measurements are limited or nonexistent because of lack of previous drilling or geochemical sampling. This may include undrilled basins or parts of basins, or may be deep plays in basins where only shallow wells had been drilled previously. The strategy used in applying kinetic models to exploration is to integrate the kinetics of hydrocarbon generation with the burial history (temperature history) of a source rock of interest to predict not only the type (oil or gas) and amount of hydrocarbons generated, but also the timing of generation and expulsion with respect to development of secondary migration pathways and reservoirs.

Kinetic models of petroleum generation include more general considerations of organic maturation and are useful in other geological applications besides petroleum exploration. For example, if measured geochemical data from a basin are compared with kinetic models, the burial and thermal evolution of the basin can be inferred or can be constrained to fit the kinetic limitations imposed by the organic maturation model (for example, Brosse and others, 1986; Ungerer and others, 1986; Sweeney, 1989). However, modeling of kerogen decomposition may be an unnecessarily cumbersome approach to assessment of geologic processes such as burial histories. Several workers have proposed kinetic models for specific reactions where the reactants and products are thought to consist only of a few chemical species rather than the complex kerogen-petroleum system as a whole (Mackenzie and McKenzie, 1983; Mackenzie, 1984; Alexander and others, 1986). In principle, this approach has the advantage that the specific reactions are known and kinetic parameters can be estimated with a greater degree of accuracy than for kerogen decomposition, even though the reactions may not be applicable directly to the question of petroleum generation. An understanding of the kinetics of kerogen decomposition is also required for proper design and operation of oil-shale processing plants and in situ retorting methods (Campbell and others, 1978; Shih and Sohn, 1980; Braun and Burnham, 1987).

In all of the above geologic applications, the usefulness of the kinetic modeling approach is limited by (1) how well the geologic and thermal history of the basin are known and (2) how accurately the kinetic model describes the real behavior of organic matter during burial heating over geologic time. The first limitation depends entirely on how well the geology and thermal history of the subject basin are known. Limitations in geologic methods and techniques for measuring current temperatures or estimating paleotemperatures determine the accuracy of geologic and thermal data. With regard to the second factor, the validity of kinetic models, much progress has been made in recent years in our understanding of the thermal evolution of organic matter. Nevertheless, there is enough uncertainty in our knowledge of fundamentals such as the mechanism and stoichiometry of petroleum generation to introduce significant uncertainty in applications of kinetic models when insufficient geologic data are available to properly constrain the models.

A number of workers have conducted field and laboratory studies of the kinetics of petroleum generation with the goal of developing kinetic models that can be used to predict oil or gas generation for a specific basin or source rock horizon. Over the past 30 years, a number of models have been proposed. All of the models currently in widespread use are based on the Arrhenius equation, which means that oil generation depends on some combination of time and temperature; that is, thermal transformation of kerogen during burial heating over geologic time.

$$dPdt = e^{-kt} \text{ where } k = A \exp(-E_a/RT) \quad (1)$$

[1]U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.

where

dP/dt = yield of product (oil or gas) with respect to time (t) for a given temperature (T)
k = rate of the reaction
A = Arrhenius constant
E_a = activation energy
R = gas constant

However, the models that have been proposed vary considerably with respect to the values for kinetic parameters (E_a, A) and the relative emphasis assigned to time or temperature as factors in petroleum generation (and thermal destruction). A historical perspective and basic explanations of the underlying theoretical principles of thermal models are given in the review by Waples (1984) and references therein.

Calibration of kinetic models is often based solely on laboratory data, especially if the objective is to evaluate the petroleum potential of a frontier area where field data are unavailable. Potential problems arising from laboratory calibrations include the fundamental question of the applicability of the Arrhenius equation over the wide range of temperatures associated with laboratory studies and petroleum generation and destruction (Burnham and others, 1989), and technical problems of laboratory measurement of kinetic parameters. Laboratory methods of obtaining kinetic parameters and potential problems are discussed by Burnham and others (1987, 1989). Detailed descriptions of methods for laboratory determination of kinetic parameters and the theoretical basis of these procedures are given by Braun and Burnham (1987), Burnham and Braun (1985), and Burnham and others (1987, 1989).

One of the earliest petroleum-generation models that enjoyed wide acceptance was that of Lopatin (1976), which became very popular following the summary by Waples (1980). The Lopatin method was used routinely in the early 1980's by many explorationists. Recently, the Lopatin method has largely been supplanted by models using more rigorous approaches based, for example, on the petroleum-generation model of Tissot and Espitalié (1975) (for example, Ungerer, 1984; Ungerer and others, 1986). Nevertheless, the Lopatin model is still used in some cases and can be a useful predictive tool if properly calibrated (Horváth and others, 1988).

Many of these more recent, mathematically rigorous models, include not only the kinetics of petroleum generation, but also more detailed treatment of the burial history of the basin under investigation. These types of models include calculation of pressure, temperature, and physical and thermal properties of the sediments as well as petroleum generation (for example, Welte and Yukler, 1981) and are really basin evolution models rather than strictly petroleum-generation models.

Development of detailed mathematical kinetic models of petroleum generation is due not only to recognized weaknesses in simpler models, but also to the availability of desktop computers with sufficient capacity to perform the necessary calculations quickly. Future research in the area of kinetic modeling of petroleum generation must include refinements in methods for obtaining thermal data for basins—both paleotemperature data and accurate determinations of present temperature conditions. The models themselves can be improved by increased understanding of kerogen structure and thermal behavior and by improvements in laboratory determination of kinetic parameters used in kinetic calculations. Parallel with the continued development of highly sophisticated chemical and computer models, training of explorationists in the applications and especially the limitations of these models must be addressed. Poor understanding of the theoretical basis of the models or the laboratory methods used to obtain input data can lead to serious misinterpretation of kinetic modeling results.

REFERENCES CITED

Alexander, R., Strachan, M.G., Kagi, R.I., and van Bronswijk, W., 1986, Heating rate effects on aromatic maturity indicators: Organic Geochemistry, v. 10, p. 997–1003.

Braun, R.L. and Burnham, A.K., 1987, Analysis of chemical reaction kinetics using a distribution of activation energies and simpler models: Energy & Fuels, v. 1, p. 153–161.

Brosse, E., Deroo, G., Roucache, J., and Botneva, T.A., 1986, Organic geochemistry as a test of validity for the results of a modelisation in the Pripiat Basin (Bielorussia), *in* Burrus, J., ed., Thermal modeling in sedimentary basins: Paris, Editions Technip, p. 497–515.

Burnham, A.K., and Braun, R.L., 1985, General kinetic model of oil shale pyrolysis: In Situ, v. 9, p. 1–23.

Burnham, A.K., Braun, R.L., Gregg, H.R., and Samoun, A.M., 1987, Comparison of methods for measuring kerogen pyrolysis rates and fitting kinetic parameters: Energy & Fuels, v. 1, p. 452–458.

Burnham, A.K., Braun, R.L., and Samoun, A., 1989, Further comparisons of methods for measuring kerogen pyrolysis rates and fitting kinetic parameters, *in* Mattavelli, L., and Novelli, L., eds., Advances in organic geochemistry 1987: Organic Geochemistry, v. 13, p. 839–845.

Campbell, J.H., Koskinas, G.H., and Stout, N.D., 1978, Kinetics of oil generation from Colorado oil shale: Fuel, v. 57, p. 372–376.

Gold, T., and Sofer, S., 1980, Scientific American, v. 242, p. 154–162.

Horváth, F., Dövényi, P., Szalay, Á., and Royden, L.H., 1988, Subsidence, thermal, and maturation history of the Great Hungarian Plain, *in* Royden, L.H. and Horváth, F., eds., The Pannonian basin, a study in basin evolution: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Memoir 45, p. 355–372.

Lopatin, N.V., 1976, Historical-genetic analysis of petroleum generation: Application of a model of uniform continu-

ous subsidence of the oil-source bed (in Russian), Akademiya Nauk SSSR, Isvestiya Seriya Geologicheskaya, v. 8, p. 93–101.

Mackenzie, A.S., 1984, Applications of biological markers, *in* Brooks, J. and Welte, D., eds., Advances in petroleum geochemistry: London, Academic Press, v. 1, p. 115–214.

Mackenzie, A.S. and McKenzie, D.H., 1983, Isomerization and aromatization of hydrocarbon in sedimentary basins formed by extension: Geological Magazine, v. 120, p. 417–528.

Porfir'ev, V.B., 1974, Inorganic origin of petroleum: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 58, p. 3–33.

Shih, S.M., and Sohn, H.Y., 1980, Nonisothermal determination of the intrinsic kinetics of oil generation from oil shale: Industrial Engineering Chemical Processes Design and Development, v. 19, p. 420–426.

Sweeney, J.J., 1989, Application of maturation indicators and oil reaction kinetics to put constraints on thermal history models of the Unita Basin, Utah, U.S.A., *in* Mattavelli, L. and Novelli, L., eds., Advances in Organic Geochemistry 1987: Organic Geochemistry, v. 13, p. 199–205.

Tissot, B., and Espitalié, J., 1975, L'evolution thermique de la matieré organique des sédiments: Applications d'une simulation mathématique: Revue Institut Francais du Petrole, v. 30, p. 734–777.

Ungerer, P., 1984, Models of petroleum formation—How to take into account geology and chemical kinetics, *in* Durand, B., ed., Thermal phenomena in sedimentary basins: Paris, Editions Technip, p. 235–246.

Ungerer, P., Espitalii, J., Marquis, F., and Durand, B., 1986, Use of kinetic models of organic matter evolution for the reconstruction of paleotemperatures. Application to the case of the Gironville Well (France), *in* Burrus, J., ed., Thermal modeling in sedimentary basins: Paris, Editions Technip, p. 531–546.

Waples, D.W., 1980, Time and temperature in petroleum formation: Application of Lopatin's method to petroleum exploration: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 64, p. 916–926.

———1984, Thermal models for oil generation, *in* Brooks, J., and Welte, D., eds., Advances in petroleum geochemistry: New York, Academic Press, v. 1, p. 7–67.

Welte, D.H. and Yukler, M.A., 1981, Petroleum origin and accumulation in basin evolution—A quantitative model: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 65, p. 1387–1396.

Biological Marker Chemistry as Indicator of Depositional Environment of Source Rocks and Crude Oils

By Jerry L. Clayton[1]

The term "biological marker" or "biomarker" was first introduced in the literature by Speers and Whitehead (1969), although the idea of chemical "fossils" has been around much longer (Fox, 1944). More recently, Mackenzie (1984) defined biological markers as "any organic compound detected in the geosphere whose basic skeleton suggests an unambiguous link with a known, contemporary natural product." The operative word in this definition is "unambiguous." It is generally accepted that petroleum is formed from thermal transformation of sedimentary organic matter derived from living systems. During burial heating, sedimentary organic matter evolves from a complex mixture of a wide variety of molecules derived more or less directly from living systems to a mixture of fewer types and simpler chemical structures. Given sufficiently high temperatures over geologic time, only methane would remain. Therefore, as thermal maturation proceeds, the structural similarity between biological marker compounds in rocks or petroleum and their precursor biomolecules in living systems becomes increasingly more ambiguous. One of the main objectives of biological marker research is to recognize the link, or diagenetic pathway, between biomolecules in living systems and biological marker compounds found in rocks or oils that have undergone variable degrees of alteration during burial heating over geologic time.

The first biomarker compounds to be identified in geological materials were porphyrins, which are diagenetic products of chlorophyll (Treibs, 1934a, b, 1935a, b, 1936). Owing to the development of sensitive analytical tools, particularly gas chromatography-mass spectrometry, significant advances have been made over the past 20 years in identification of biological marker compounds in rocks and petroleum. Many studies, particularly early work, have been concerned primarily with the identification of chemical structures of biological markers in sediments and oils (for example, Han and Calvin, 1969; Balogh and others, 1973; Kimble and others, 1974; Seifert, 1975; Seifert and others, 1978; Rowland and others, 1982; Schmitter and others, 1982; Trendel and others, 1982; Ekweozor and Straus, 1983; many others). In recent years, more attention has been given to applications of biological markers in petroleum geochemistry. Comprehensive reviews of biological marker geochemistry and applications are given by Mackenzie (1984) and Johns (1986).

Biological markers are important in petroleum systems for interpretation of oil-to-oil and oil-to-source rock correlations, thermal maturation, biodegradation, and migration. The present paper summarizes applications of biological markers in interpretation of depositional environment of source rocks. This includes consideration not only of source rocks themselves but also crude oils, because the biological marker composition of oils can be used in some cases to infer the depositional setting of the parent source organic matter.

Interpretation of the depositional setting of sedimentary organic matter using biological markers can be approached in two ways. First, chemical conditions in the sedimentary environment may be inferred from which diagenetic reactions occur among numerous possible reaction pathways. For example, the ratio of pristane-to-phytane has been suggested as an indicator of the relative oxicity or anoxicity of sediments in which organic matter accumulates (Didyk and others, 1978), although recent evidence suggests that factors other than redox potential may affect the ratio (Goossens and others, 1984; ten Haven and others, 1987). Second, biological markers that are characteristic of a particular organism or a group of organisms indicate the chemistry of the depositional environment because of the ecological requirements of the contributing organisms. For example, the presence of certain isoprenoid compounds characteristic of methanogenic bacteria indicate strongly reducing conditions because methanogens are strict anaerobes, while euxinic conditions can be inferred from the presence of aryl isoprenoids, which have been suggested as indicators of green photosynthetic sulfur bacteria (Summons and Powell, 1987). Many studies of biological marker assemblages in sediments and petroleum have been aimed at interpreting the specific type of environment or overlying water column in which the sediments were deposited, such as lacustrine freshwater, freshwater brackish, saline, or hypersaline (for example, Mello and others, 1988; Brassell and others, 1988; Fu Jiamo and others, 1986; ten Haven and others, 1988; Volkman, 1988).

Biological markers can also be used to infer the biological source of the organic matter. In this case, interpretation of the organic input is the objective, rather

[1]U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.

than the actual paleoenvironment in which sediments were accumulating. Organic input to the sediments may be predominantly from organisms populating the sedimentary environment, in which case the approach used to interpret the paleoenvironment would lead also to an understanding of the main source input. However, in many cases nonindigenous (allochthonous) organic matter may be present in significant amounts. In this latter case, interpretation of the depositional environment requires differentiating between the biological marker components that are derived from organisms populating the sedimentary environments and those associated with allochthonous organic input. The main groups of organisms contributing organic matter to sediments are higher terrestrial plants, algae, and bacteria (Tissot and Welte, 1984). Comet and Eglinton (1987), Brassell and others (1987), and Volkman (1988) discussed biological marker assemblages that are characteristic for these three groups of organisms.

Future research in applications of biological markers for interpreting depositional environment will include continuing expansion of the inventory of biological marker compounds in living organisms, sediments, and oils. In addition, further work is needed to elucidate diagenetic and catagenetic pathways of biological marker evolution and factors which favor particular reaction pathways (such as heating rate, Eh, pH, mineral matrix, or temperature).

REFERENCES CITED

Balogh, B., Wilson, D.M., Christiansen, P., and Burlingame, A.L., 1973, 17 α (H)-Hopane identified in oil shale of the Green River Formation (Eocene) by carbon-13 NMR: Nature, v. 242, p. 603–605.

Brassell, S.C., Eglinton, G., and Howell, V.J., 1987, Paleoenvironmental assessment for marine organic-rich sediments, *in* Brooks, J. and Fleet, A.J., eds., Marine petroleum source rocks: Boston, Blackwell Scientific Publications, p. 79–98.

Brassell, S.C., Sheng Guoying, Fu Jiamo, and Eglinton, G., 1988, Biological markers in lacustrine Chinese oil shales, *in* Fleet, A.J., Kelts, K., and Talbot, M.R., eds., Lacustrine petroleum source rocks: Boston, Blackwell Scientific Publications, p. 299–308.

Comet, P.A., and Eglinton, G., 1987, The use of lipids as facies indicators, *in* Brooks, J., and Fleet, A.J., eds., Marine petroleum source rocks: Boston, Blackwell Scientific Publications, p. 99–117.

Didyk, B.M., Simoneit, B.R.T., Brassell, S.C., and Eglinton, G., 1978, Organic geochemical indicators of paleoenvironmental conditions of sedimentation: Nature, v. 272, p. 216–222.

Ekweozor, C.M. and Straus, O.P., 1983, 18,19-Bisnor-13 β (H), 14 α (H)-cheilanthane: A novel degraded tricyclic sesterterpenoid-type hydrocarbon from the Athabasca oil sands: Tetrahedron Letters, v.23, p. 2711–2714.

Fox, D.L., 1944, Biochemical fossils: Science, v. 100, p. 111–113.

Fu Jiamo, Guoying, S., and Dehan, L., 1988, Organic geochemical characteristics of major types of terrestrial petroleum source rocks in China, *in* Fleet, A.J., Kelts, K., and Talbot, M.R., eds., Lacustrine petroleum source rocks: Boston, Blackwell Scientific Publications, p. 279–289.

Goossens, H., de Leeuw, J.W., Schenck, P.A., and Brassell, S.C., 1984, Tocopherols as likely precursors of pristane in ancient sediments and crude oils: Nature, v. 212, p. 440–442.

Han, J., and Calvin, M., 1969, Occurrence of C_{22}–C_{25} isoprenoids in Bell Creek crude oil: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 33, p. 733–742.

Johns, R.B., ed., 1986, Biological markers in the sedimentary record: New York, Elsevier, 364 p.

Kimble, B.J., Maxwell, J.R., Philp, R.P., and Eglinton, G., 1974, Identification of steranes and triterpanes in geolipid extracts by high-resolution gas chromatography and mass spectrometry: Chemical Geology, v. 14, p. 173–198.

Mackenzie, A.S., 1984, Applications of biological markers, *in* Brooks, J., and Welte, D., eds., Advances in petroleum geochemistry: New York, Academic Press, v. 1, p. 115–214.

Mello, M.R., Telnaes, N., Gaglianone, P.C., Chicarelli, M.I., Brassell, S.C., and Maxwell, J.R., 1988, Organic geochemical characterization of depositional palaeoenvironments of source rocks and oils in Brazilian marginal basins, *in* Mattavelli, L. and Novelli, L., eds., Advances in organic geochemistry 1987: Organic Geochemistry, v. 13, p. 31–45.

Rowland, S.J., Lamb, N.A., Wilkinson, C.F., and Maxwell, J.R., 1982, Confirmation of 2,6,10,15,19-pentamethyleicosane in methan-ogenic bacteria and sediments: Tetrahedron Letters, p. 101–104.

Schmitter, J.M., Sucrow, W., and Arpino, P.J., 1982, Occurrence of novel tetracyclic geochemical markers: 8,14-seco-hopanes in a Nigerian crude oil: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 46, p. 2345–2350.

Seifert, W.K., 1975, Carboxylic acids in petroleum and sediments, *in* Herz, W., Grisebach, H., and Kirby, G.W., eds., Progress in the chemistry of organic natural products, v. 32: New York, Springer-Verlag, p. 2–49.

Seifert, W.K., Moldowan, J.M., Smith, G.W., and Whitehead, E.V., 1978, First proof of structure of a C_{28}-pentacyclic triterpane in petroleum: Nature, v. 271, p. 436–437.

Speers, G.C., and Whitehead, E.V., 1969, Crude petroleum, *in* Eglington, E., and Murphy, M.T.J., eds., Organic geochemistry—Methods and results: New York, Springer-Verlag, p. 639–675.

Summons, R.E., and Powell, T.G., 1987, Identification of aryl isoprenoids in source rocks and crude oils: Biological markers for the green sulfur bacteria: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 51, p. 557–566.

ten Haven, H.L., de Leeuw, J.W., Rullkötter, J., and Sinninghe-Damasté, J.S., 1987, Restricted utility of the pristane/phytane ratio as a paleoenvironmental indicator: Nature, v. 330, p. 2543–2548.

ten Haven, H.L., de Leeuw, J.W., Sinnighe-Damasté, J.S., Schenck, P.A., Palmer, S.E., and Zumberge, J., 1988, Applications of biological markers in the recognition of

palaeo-hypersaline environments, *in* Fleet, A.J., Kelts, K., and Talbot, M.R., eds., Lacustrine petroleum source rocks: Boston, Blackwell Scientific Publications, p. 123–130.

Tissot, B.P., and Welte, D.H., 1984, Petroleum formation and occurrence, 2d ed.: New York, Springer-Verlag, 699 p.

Treibs, A., 1934a, Organic mineral substances, II—Occurrence of chlorophyll derivatives in an oil shale of the Upper Triassic: Analytical Chemistry, v. 517, p. 103–144.

———1934b, Chlorophyll- and haemin derivatives in bituminous rocks, petroleum, mineral waxes and asphalts: Analytical Chemistry, v. 510, p. 42–62.

———1935a, Organic mineral substances, IV—Chlorophyll and hemin derivatives in bituminous rocks, petroleums, coals, and phosphorites: Analytical Chemistry, v. 517, p. 172–196.

———1935b, Porphyrins in coal: Analytical Chemistry, v. 520, p. 144–151.

———1936, Chlorophyll and hemin derivatives in organic mineral substances: Angewandte Chemie, v. 49, p. 682–686.

Trendel, J.M., Restle, A., Connan, J., and Albrecht, P., 1982, Identification of a novel series of tetracyclic terpane hydrocarbons (C_{24}–C_{27}) in sediments and petroleum: Journal of Chemical Society, Chemical Communication, p. 304–305.

Volkman, J.K., 1988, Biological marker compounds as indicators of the depositional environments of petroleum source rocks, *in* Fleet, A.J., Kelts, K., and Talbot, M.R., eds., Lacustrine petroleum source rocks: Boston, Blackwell Scientific Publications, p. 103–122.

Sulfur in Source Rocks and Petroleum

By Jerry L. Clayton[1]

The purpose of this report is to summarize current understanding of the geochemistry of organic sulfur compounds (OSC) in crude oil and source rocks. Sulfur is the most abundant nonhydrocarbon component in crude oil; the average sulfur content of oil is about 0.65 percent (Tissot and Welte, 1984). The range is from a few hundreths of 1 percent up to 8 percent and rarely up to 10 to 14 percent, although most crude oils contain less than 4 percent (Constantinides and Arich, 1967; Ho and others, 1974; Orr, 1978; Tissot and Welte, 1984; Bolshakov, 1986). Tissot and Welte (1984) considered 1 percent total sulfur to be the boundary between high- and low-sulfur oils. Most of the sulfur in crude oils is contained in organic compounds; secondary amounts are present as dissolved elemental sulfur or metal sulfides (Orr, 1978). OSC occur predominantly in the middle to high boiling point range in most crude oils (Sinnighe Damasté and others, 1988a).

OSC are of considerable interest to explorationists and refinery chemists for several reasons. OSC in petroleum present serious refining and environmental problems that can significantly diminish the economic value of a given petroleum deposit. Therefore, explorationists need to be able to predict the occurrence of high-sulfur crude oil with some degree of accuracy. Furthermore, sulfur compounds in crude oils occur in a wide variety of organic structures, many of which are thought to involve early diagenetic reactions of sulfur with biomolecules derived directly from organisms contributing organic matter to sediments (Sinnighe Damasté and others, 1987c) and can therefore be used for oil-source rock correlations and for interpretation of paleoenvironment of deposition of organic-rich rocks (Brassell and others, 1989; ten Haven and others, 1985, 1988; Kohnen and others, 1989; Rullkötter and others, 1989). Relative amounts of sulfur compound classes have also been used to assess the thermal maturity of oils (Ho and others, 1974), and the molecular distribution of OSC may have application in thermal maturity studies of oils or rocks (Rullkötter and Orr, 1989). Thermal requirements for breakdown of kerogen to generate oil depend partly on the distribution of sulfur bonds in the kerogen. Kerogens containing large amounts of sulfur bonds (type "II-S" kerogen) have been observed to generate oil under relatively mild thermal conditions compared to low-sulfur kerogens (Orr, 1978). Therefore, studies or models of oil generation must consider the effects of sulfur on kinetics of kerogen breakdown.

Figure 4 gives the chemical structures of the main types of OSC found in the geosphere to date. The relative importance of the different sulfur structural types varies markedly among different oils in response to a variety of factors such as the organic source, thermal maturity, and degradation (Ho and others, 1974, Bolshakov, 1986). Thiophenes were among the first OSC reported in oil and coal tar (Meyer 1882; referenced by Constantinides and Arich, 1967). Since that time, a large number of OSC have been identified in crude oil (Ho and others, 1974; Hughes, 1984; Bolshakov, 1986; Payzant and others, 1985, 1986; Sinnighe Damasté and others, 1987c). Developments in research into OSC in crude oils prior to 1967 were reviewed by Constantinides and Arich (1967). Much less is known about the distribution of OSC in sediments and source rocks, although much research recently has been focused on this subject (Hughes, 1984; Valisolalao and others, 1984; Brassell, 1986; Sinnighe Damasté and others, 1987a, 1987b, 1987c, 1988a, 1988b, 1989a, 1989b; Sinnighe Damasté and de Leeuw, 1987; Vairavamurthy and Mopper, 1987; ten Haven and others, 1988).

Recently, analytical methods have been developed which allow more detailed characterization of OSC in both crude oils and rock or sediment extracts. In addition, sulfur compounds have been obtained from high-molecular-weight fractions of crude oil and from kerogens by pyrolysis (Giraud and Bestougeff, 1967; Sinnighe Damasté and others, 1988a) and by selective chemical degradation of kerogen or other high-molecular-weight material (asphaltenes) (Sinnghe Damasté and others, 1988b). These analytical developments have led to a better understanding of the timing and mechanism of sulfur incorporation in sedimentary organic matter and have resulted in a rapid growth of research activity in this area.

Of considerable importance is the timing and mechanism of sulfur incorporation in sedimentary organic materials, because the practical application of organosulfur chemistry in petroleum geochemistry depends on understanding the relationship between the distribution of OSC and source rock deposition and secondary effects in oils (maturation, migration, degradation). Early work

[1]U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.

ers concluded that OSC found in crude oil could not have been present in the organic matter initially deposited in source rocks because sulfur compounds in living systems are not present in the amounts and molecular distributions found in sedimentary organic matter and crude oils (Birch, 1953; Constantinides and Arich, 1967). Further, the present consensus view is that sulfur is not added in significant amounts after oil has been generated (Gransch and Posthuma, 1974; Orr, 1978). It seems likely that most of the OSC found in crude oils are derived from kerogen in the source rock and are formed during early diagenesis of the organic matter. Constantinides and Arich (1967) suggested that elemental sulfur or H_2S could react with di-unsaturated hydrocarbons during early diagenesis to yield the thiophene series of OSC. Subsequent investigations by Sinnighe Damasté and coworkers (1987a,b, 1988b, 1989a) have provided substantial support for this hypothesis.

Gransch and Posthuma (1974) presented a conceptual framework for incorporation of sulfur into sedimentary organic matter in which high- and low-sulfur kerogens (and associated crude oils) are a function of the chemistry of the depositional environment of the source rock. Their scheme depended on the oxidation-reduction potential of the sediment (the presence or absence of sulfide) and whether or not reactive iron is present, which would effectively remove sulfide from the system before it could react in less kinetically favored organic reactions. Therefore, in depositional settings where reducing conditions coexist with small amounts of iron, sulfide could be present in sufficient quantities to react with organic matter to form high-sulfur kerogens. This reasoning is commonly used to explain high sulfur contents observed in many crude oils known to be derived from carbonate source rocks, and is sometimes used in the reverse manner as evidence that a particular oil may have been derived from a carbonate source rock. In contrast, depositional settings where greater quantities of reactive iron are present usually produce low-sulfur kerogens because most of the sulfur precipitates as iron sulfides before reactions with the organic matter can occur. This situation is typical for deposition of shale source rocks, although if enough sulfide is present or reactive iron content is relatively small, kerogens contained in shales may also have high sulfur contents. In general, oils derived from carbonate source rocks contain higher sulfur contents than oils derived from shale source rocks (Palacas, 1988).

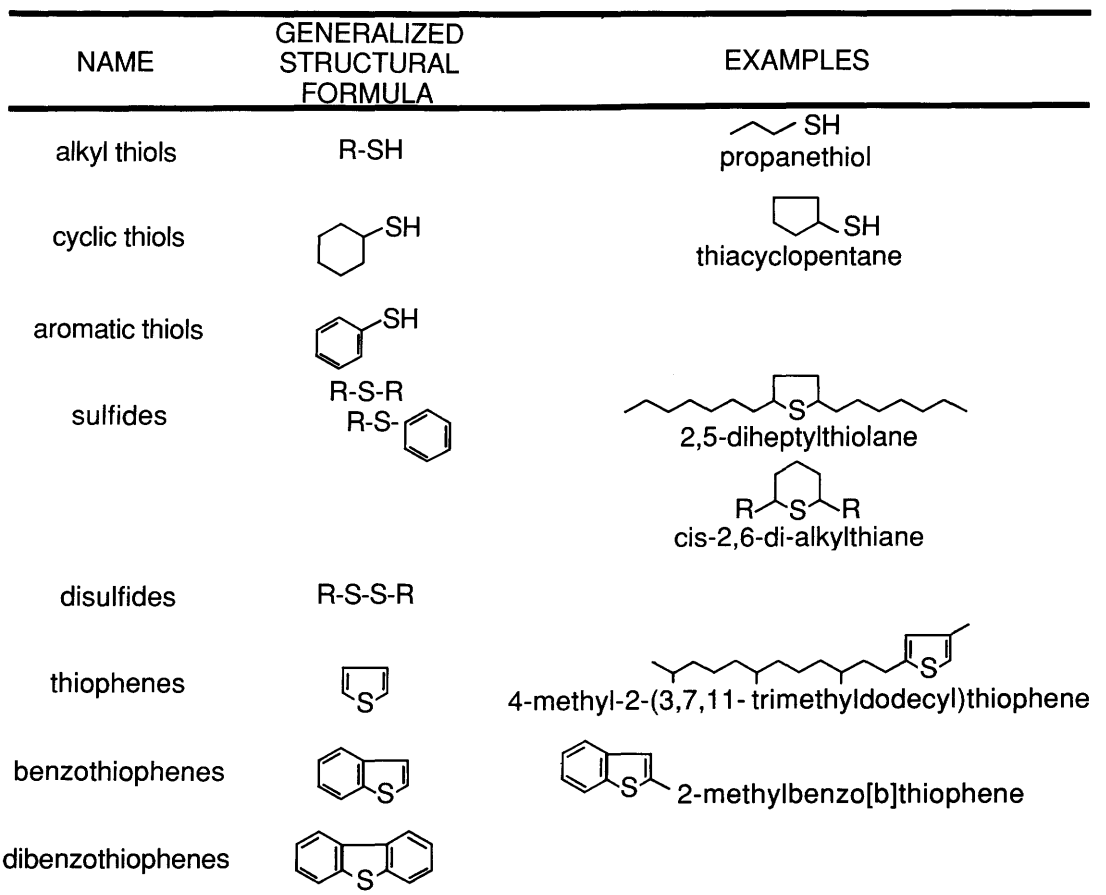


Figure 4. Classes of sulfur compounds reported in rock extracts and crude oils (after Ho and others, 1974; Sinnighe Damasté and others, 1987c). S, sulfur; H, hydrogen; R, alkyl group.

Research in the area of sulfur geochemistry of sediments and oils is likely to remain quite active for the next several years. Besides applications in oil-source rock correlations, maturity studies, and kinetic models of oil generation, sulfur geochemistry may play an important role in interpretations of the diagenetic and thermal history of hydrocarbon compounds as well. For example, hydrocarbons that would otherwise be present in a rock extract can be incorporated into the resin, asphaltene, or kerogen fraction by sulfur bonding. Thermal desulfurization can later release these "trapped" hydrocarbons. The importance of this process is that research and applications using hydrocarbons contained in rock extracts must take into account the sulfur pathway as a sink or a source of hydrocarbons during the thermal evolution of organic matter and generation in petroleum.

REFERENCES CITED

Birch, S.F., 1953, Sulfur compounds in petroleum: Journal of the Institute of Petrology, v. 39, p. 185–201.

Bolshakov, G.F., 1986, Organic sulfur compounds of petroleum: Sulfur Reports, v. 5, p. 103–393.

Brassell, S.C., Guoying, S., Jimao, F., Pingan, P., Jigang, J., Gowar, A.P., and Eglinton, G., 1989, Organic sulphur compounds in Chinese hypersaline lake sediments and crude oils: American Chemical Society, Division of Geochemistry, 197th American Chemical Society National Meeting, Dallas, April 9–14, 1989.

Constantinides, G., and Arich, G., 1967, Non-hydrocarbon compounds in petroleum, *in* Nagy, B., and Colombo, U., eds., Fundamental aspects of petroleum geochemistry: New York, Elsevier, p. 109–176.

Giraud, A., and Bestougeff, M.A., 1967, Characterization of high molecular weight sulphur compounds in petroleum by pyrolysis and gas chromatography: Journal of Gas Chromatography, p. 464–470.

Gransch, J.A., and Posthuma, J., 1974, On the origin of sulfur in crudes, *in* Tissot, B., and Bienner, F., eds., Advances in organic geochemistry 1973: Paris, Editions Technip, p. 727–739.

Ho, T.Y., Rogers, M.A., Drushel, H.V., and Koons, C.B., 1974, Evolution of sulfur compounds in crude oils: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 58, p. 2338–2348.

Hughes, W.B., 1984, Use of thiophenic organosulfur compounds in characterizing crude oils derived from carbonate versus siliclastic sources, *in* Palacas, J.G., ed., Petroleum geochemistry and source rock potential of carbonate rocks: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Studies in Geology 18, p. 181–196.

Kohnen, M.E.L., Sinnighe Damasté, J.S., Eglinton, T.I., Rijpstra, W.I., and de Leeuw, J.W., 1989, Organic sulfur and non-sulfur compounds as selective indicators of changes in the paleo environment—A study of a Cretaceous oil shale from Jordan: American Chemical Society, Division of Geochemistry, 197th American Chemical Society National Meeting, Dallas, April 9–14, 1989.

de Leeuw, J. and Sinnighe Damasté, J.S., 1989, Organic sulfur compounds and other biomarkers as indicators of paleosalinity and paleoproductivity: American Chemical Society, Division of Geochemistry, 197th American Chemical Society National Meeting, Dallas, April 9–14, 1989.

Orr, W.L., 1978, Sulphur in heavy oils, oil sands and oil shales, *in* Strausz, O.P., and Lown, E.M., eds., Oil sand and oil shale chemistry: New York, Springer-Verlag, p. 223–243.

Payzant, J.D., Cyr, T.D., Montgomery, D.S., and Strausz, O.P., 1985, The synthesis of 1-β(H), 6-β(Me)-2,2,6-trimethyl-8-ethylbicyclo-4,3,0–7-thianone and the occurrence of the isomeric bicyclic terpenoid sulfides occurring in petroleum: Tetrahedron Letters, v. 26, p. 4175–4178.

Payzant, J.D., Montgomery, D.S., and Strausz, O.P., 1986, Sulfides in petroleum, *in* Leythaeuser, D., and Rullkötter, J., eds., Advances in organic geochemistry 1985, Organic Geochemistry, v. 10, p. 357–369.

Rullkötter, J., Littke, R., and Schaefer, R.G., 1989, Biological markers as facies indicators in sulfur-rich lacustrine sediments of Miocene age (Norglinger Ries, southern Germany): American Chemical Society, Division of Geochemistry, 197th American Chemical Society National Meeting, Dallas, April 9–14, 1989.

Rullkötter, J., and Orr, W.L., 1989, Effects of thermal maturation on the distribution of sulfur compounds in sulfur-rich Monterey crude oils: American Chemical Society, Division of Geochemistry, 197th American Chemical Society National Meeting, Dallas, April 9–14, 1989.

Sinnighe Damasté, J.S., Kock-van Dalen, A.C., de Leeuw, J.W., and Schenck, P.A., 1987a, The identification of 2,3-dimethy-5-(2,6,10-trimethyl-undecane) thiophene, a novel sulphur containing biological marker: Tetrahedron Letters, v. 28, p. 957–960.

Sinnighe Damasté, J.S., de Leeuw, J.W., Kock-van Dalen, A.C., de Leeuw, M.A., de Lange, F., Rijpstra, W.I.C., and Schenck, P.A., 1987b, The occurrence and identification of series of organic sulphur compounds in oils and sediment extracts: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 51, p. 2393–2400.

———1987c, The occurrence and identification of series of organic sulphur compounds in oils and sediment extracts. I—A study of Rozel Point Oil (USA): Geochimica Cosmochimica Acta, v. 51, p. 2369–2391.

Sinnighe Damasté, J.S., Kock-van Dalen, A.C., de Leeuw, J.W., Schenck, P.A., 1988a, Identification of homologous series of alkylated thiophenes, thiolanes, thianes and benzothiophenes present in pyrolysates of sulphur-rich kerogens: Journal of Chromatography, v. 435, p. 435–452.

Sinnighe Damasté, J.S., Rijpstra, W.I.C., de Leeuw, J.W., and Schenck, P.A., 1988b, Origin of organic sulphur compounds and sulphur-containing high molecular weight substances in sediments and immature crude oils, *in* Novelli, L., and Mattavelli, L., eds., Advances in Organic Geochemistry 1987: Organic Geochemistry, v. 13, p. 593–606.

Sinnighe Damasté, J.S., Rijpstra, W.I.C., Kock-van Dalen, A.C., de Leeuw, J.W., and Schenck, P.A., 1989a, Quenching of labile functionalised lipids by inorganic sulphur species: Evidence for the formation of sedimentary organic sul-

phur compounds at the early stages of diagenesis: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 53, p. 1343–1355.

———1989b, The occurrence and identification of series of organic sulphur compounds in oils and sediment extracts, II—Their presence in samples from hypersaline and non-hypersaline depositional environments and their possible application as molecular indicators of organic input, maturity and depositional environment: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 53, p. 1323–1341.

ten Haven, H.L., de Leeuw, J.W., and Schenck, P.A., 1985, Organic geochemical studies of a Messinian evaporitic basin, northern Apennines (Italy) I: Hydrocarbon biological markers for a hypersaline environment: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 49, p. 2181–2191.

ten Haven, H.L., de Leeuw, J.W., Sinninghe Damasté, J.S., Schenck, P.A., Palmer, S.E., and Zumberge, J.E., 1988, Application of biological markers in the recognition of palaeo hypersaline environments, *in* Kelts, K., Fleet, A.J., and Talbot, M., eds., Lacustrine petroleum source rocks: Geological Society Special Publication 40, p. 123–130.

Tissot, B.P., and Welte, D.H., 1984, Petroleum formation and occurrence: New York, Springer-Verlag, 699 p.

Vairavamurthy, A., and Mopper, K., 1987, Geochemical formation of organosulphur compounds (thiols) by addition of H_2S to sedimentary organic matter: Nature, v. 329, p. 623–625.

Valisolalao, J., Peerakis, N., Chappe, B., and Albrecht, P., 1984, A novel sulfur containing C_{35} hopanoid in sediments: Tetrahedron Letters, v. 25, p. 1183–1186.

The Geochemistry of Evaporites and Associated Petroleum

By Donald E. Anders *and* Robert J. Hite[1]

INTRODUCTION

Nearly two-thirds of the world's known petroleum resources are associated with evaporites (Nehring, 1978; Perrodon, 1978). The most noted of these are the giant oil fields of the Middle East (500 billion bbl), which are believed derived from the Arabian Gulf evaporite facies and the Arabian-Persian carbonate platform. In spite of the fact that enormous amounts of oil are associated with evaporites, the exact nature of this relation remains unclear. Some researchers have sought to unravel this mystery by studying the relation between biomass production and evaporitic environment (Copeland and Jones, 1965; Kirkland and Evans, 1981; Warren, 1986; Hite and Anders, in press); others have sought to explain the spatiotemporal relation between evaporitic volumes and oil volumes (Szatmari, 1980; Kalinko, 1974; Hite and Anders, in press); while still others have chosen to address the geochemical relation between oil and associated evaporites (Palacas, 1984, 1988; Hite and Anders, in press). A comparison of oil volumes (Parparova and others, 1981) to evaporite volumes (Zharkov, 1981) by Hite and Anders (in press) shows a strong spatiotemporal relation between oil and evaporites of the Upper Devonian, Lower Cretaceous, and lower Neogene but no relationship with major evaporitic occurrences in the Lower Cambrian and Lower Permian. In basins showing a strong relation between petroleum and evaporite volumes, 46 percent of the oil and gas reservoirs occur below the evaporites, 41 percent above the evaporites, and 13 percent within the evaporite facies (Kalinko, 1974). Hite and Anders (in press) offered several possible explanations for why large volumes of evaporites do not always have large volumes of associated hydrocarbons: (1) not all evaporite depositional environments are conducive to the accumulation of organic matter sufficient to generate commercial quantities of hydrocarbons (such as the shallow-water oxic environments of the midcontinent evaporites); (2) appropriate reservoirs and traps for evaporitic petroleum never developed or developed after migration; and (3) most occurrences of petroleum associated with evaporites are genetically related to evaporitic carbonate sediments which are not included in evaporite volume data. Whatever the reasons for this disparity, it is well documented that evaporitic environments can produce abundant biomass while providing excellent conditions for preservation of organic matter (Copeland and Jones, 1965; Neev and Emery, 1967; Nissenbaum and others, 1972, Cohen and others, 1977; Degens and others, 1978; Imhoff and others, 1979; Sackett and others, 1979; Sturm, 1980; Hammer, 1981; Kirkland and Evans, 1981; Northan and others, 1981; Lyons and others, 1982; Boon and others, 1983; Hite and others, 1984; Spencer and others, 1984; Klug and others, 1985; Schidlowski and others, 1985; Warren, 1986; and many more).

Evaporite environments and the rock types derived from them (carbonate, sulfate, and chloride minerals) cover a wide range of salinities from 35 permil (vitasaline) to over 350 permil (supersaline)(Lang, 1937; Kirkland and Evans, 1981; Hite and Anders, in press). Biomass production at various salinity stages in modern evaporitic environments generally increases with increasing salinity while the number of life-forms decreases with increasing salinity (Copeland and Jones, 1965; Klug and others, 1985). Green algae and cyanobacteria dominate the biomass of lower salinities while halophilic bacteria dominate the higher salinities (Javor, 1983; Sammy, 1985). Preservation of organic matter is greatest in the anoxic environments of the higher salinities where burrowing and grazing organisms and aerobic bacteria find it difficult to survive (Friedman and others, 1973; Gerdes and Krumbein, 1984). However, high productivity and preservation do not necessarily mean high organic matter content in evaporitic rocks of higher salinities. This seeming contradiction is the result of high precipitation rates for evaporite minerals, which dilute the solid organic matter in the sediment (Hite and Anders, in press). Also, dissolved organic matter may be excluded from precipitation and never become a factor in organic matter content of evaporitic rocks unless the evaporitic environment is totally desiccated (Hite and Anders, in press).

By far the most important evaporitic source rocks with respect to petroleum generation are carbonates. Carbonate source rocks often contain dark organic-rich laminated carbonate (marls) and argillaceous zones that can act as principal source material for petroleum generation (Hunt, 1968; Palacas and others, 1984). Carbonates can be excellent reservoirs as well (von Englehardt, 1977). Associated evaporites (anhydrite, halite, and potash) are often the cap rocks for such reservoirs. Although

[1]U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.

organic matter productivity in brines producing only carbonates is generally much lower than in higher salinity environments, carbonate deposition rate is the slowest of all minerals in the evaporite depositional cycle, thus allowing total organic matter values to rise above values found in more rapidly precipitating mineral stages. Carbonate-halite precipitation rates can be as low as 1:400 (Hite and Anders, in press).

GEOCHEMISTRY OF EVAPORITE ROCKS

Marine Carbonates

The organic chemistry of marine carbonate rocks is much better known than for other evaporite minerals (Palacas, 1984; Palacas and others, 1984). For a review of pertinent literature pertaining to carbonate source rocks of petroleum, see Palacas (1988). Organic carbon content of carbonate rocks is highly variable, with values as high as 10 to 30 percent being reported (Spiro and others, 1983; Palacas, 1984; Palacas and others, 1984; Powell, 1984). However, most carbonate source rocks have total organic carbon values in the range 0.5 to 5.0 percent (Palacas, 1984; Palacas and others, 1984; Sassen and others, 1987; Clark and Philp, in press). Bitumen extracts from marine evaporitic carbonates generally show pristane/phytane ratios below 1, however, values can be above 1 depending on the type of organic matter input and the reducing potential of the sedimentary environment (Didyk and others, 1978). Phytane/n-C_{18} ratios are generally above 0.5 and often above 1. The carbon preference index (CPI) is usually equal to or less than 1 (nC_{22}–nC_{32}) but can show odd-carbon predominance (CPI > 1) where there has been terrestrial organic matter input into the sediments. Nonhydrocarbon/hydrocarbon ratios are variable, depending on maturity, but generally exceed 0.35 in immature to moderately mature carbonate rocks. The C_{24} tetracyclic abundance is usually larger than the C_{26} tricyclic terpane pair. Hopanoid concentrations generally exceed sterane concentrations, and the C_{27}/C_{29} sterane ratio is between 1 and 1.5. Methyl isomers of dibenzothiophene generally form a V-pattern in relative distribution in moderately mature samples but a stairstep distribution in mature samples (Hughes, 1984). Sulfur contents (organic and elemental) are generally higher in carbonate extracts than in shale extracts. The C_{23} tricyclic terpane peak is commonly the dominant tricyclic terpane. For further geochemical characteristics of organic matter in carbonates, see Palacas and others (1984, 1988), Mello and others (1988), and Hite and Anders (in press).

Lacustrine Carbonates

The hydrocarbon chemistry of bitumen extracts from carbonate-rich lacustrine rocks does not resemble that of marine carbonates in all aspects, largely due to a greater influx of terrestrial oxidized organic matter into lacustrine sediments. This terrestrial component is commonly sufficient to influence CPI values and give strong odd-carbon predominance in n-alkane distributions and to change C_{27} and C_{28} sterane dominance to C_{29} dominance. Other differences are seen in the dominant tricyclic terpane (frequently C_{20} or C_{21} instead of C_{23}) and in relative abundance of hopanes/steranes is greater than 1 (< 1 in thermally immature rocks). Perhaps the two most distinguishing biomarker characteristics of open-lacustrine carbonate extracts are the great dominance of nC_{17} over other n-alkanes and the abundance of carotane isomers (β-carotane dominating). β-carotane is only minimally present in marine carbonates but is very abundant in lacustrine carbonate (Murphy and others, 1967; Anders and Robinson, 1971; Clark and Philp, in press). For further geochemical properties of lacustrine carbonates, see Hite and Anders (in press).

Anhydrites

Anhydrites are dense impermeable rocks whose organic matter genetically resembles the algal-rich type I and II kerogen, however, their organic content is usually too low for them to be considered viable source rocks (< 0.3 percent total organic content). One noted exception is the high organic carbon values (up to 30 percent total organic content) reported by Richardson and others (1988) for intrahalite beds consisting of laminated clays, magnesite, and anhydrite from the north Red Sea/Gulf of Suez Syn-Rift evaporite sequence. The authors theorized that these organic-rich zones are a result of algal blooms occurring during episodic freshening events. The importance of these thin organic-rich evaporite deposits as hydrocarbon source rocks remains to be seen.

Organic geochemical data on anhydrites are limited (Connan, 1981; Palmer and Zumberge, 1981; Gardner and Bray, 1984; Connan and others, 1986; Hite and Anders, in press). Because of the highly reducing environment of anhydrite deposition, pristane/phytane ratios are less than 1, phytane/n-C_{18} ratios are somewhat variable but generally greater than 1, CPI is less than 1 (nC_{22} to nC_{32}); in relative concentrations, pentacyclics > steranes > tricyclics, C_{24} tetracyclic > C_{26} tricyclics, C_{29} steranes > C_{27} or C_{28} steranes; and extended hopanes (C_{31}-C_{35}) are abundant.

Halite and Potash

Volumetrically, halite and potash are the most abundant of the evaporite minerals. One author, Szatmari (1980), suggests that via dissolution mechanisms halites could be the principal source rocks of the world's largest oil deposits. In spite of the volumetric favorability

of halite and potash as source rocks and the organic richness of halite- and potash-producing brines (300 + permil salinity range), the organic carbon contents of halite and potash seldom exceed 0.3 percent, and the majority has less than 0.01 percent TOC. The general consensus is that TOC values this low are insufficient to be considered a source rock (Hite and Anders, in press). Consequently, few studies of the organic geochemistry of halite and potash rocks have been reported. One report by Hite and Anders (in press), of Paradox and Permian Basin halites, gave the following general characteristics: pristane/phytane ratios 0.9 to 1.1, CPI generally less than 1 (nC_{22} to nC_{32}), relative concentration of hopanes exceeds steranes, C_{23} tricyclic terpane is the dominate tricyclic terpane, C_{24} tetracyclic > C_{26} tricyclics, and the nonhydrocarbon/hydrocarbon ratio (non-HC/HC) is usually less than 0.3.

GEOCHEMISTRY OF EVAPORITE SOURCED OILS

Most of the geochemical information on oils derived from evaporite rocks is for oils associated with marine and lacustrine carbonates. For marine carbonate oils, see the literature survey by Palacas (1988) and Mello and others (1988). For lacustrine carbonate oils, see Tissot and others (1978), Mason (1981), Poole and Claypool (1984), Fleet and others (1988), and Mello and others (1988). Geochemical data on oil derived from anhydrite, halite, and potash are much more limited (see Hite and Anders, in press).

Marine Carbonate Oils

Marine carbonate oils have the following general geochemical characteristics: full range of API values from less than 20° to more than 50°, sulfur content usually greater than 1 percent, pristane/phytane less than 1, CPI less than 1, non-HC/HC is 0.1 to 0.5, relative abundance of hopanes exceeds steranes, C_{27} steranes/ C_{29} steranes variable, moderate amounts of tricyclic terpanes (C_{23} maxima), abundant extended hopanes (C_{31}–C_{35}), C_{24} tetracyclic terpane > C_{26} tricyclic terpanes, and V-shaped distribution for methyldibenzothiophenes (Hughes, 1984). Additional organic geochemical properties are discussed by Palacas (1988) and Hite and Anders (in press).

Lacustrine Carbonate Oils

Lacustrine carbonate oils can have variable geochemical features depending on whether they are derived from organic matter dominated by type I kerogen (such as some of the Uinta basin oils) or some combination of types I and III kerogens (such as found in China basins). Generally, API values range from 20° to over 40°; sulfur contents less than 1 percent in oils from iron-rich sediments, pristane/phytane and CPI values are both less than 1 in oils derived from sediments deposited under anoxic, reducing, open-lacustrine evaporitic conditions but frequently greater than 1 in oils derived from both lacustrine biota and oxidized organic matter from continental sources; non-HC/HC is 0.2 to 1.7; relative abundance of steranes > hopanes > tricyclics in moderately mature oils, but hopanes > tricyclics > steranes in mature oils; C_{27} steranes < C_{29} steranes where continental input is a factor; tricyclic terpane maxima usually C_{20} or C_{21} but rarely C_{23}; minimal extended hopanes; moderate gammacerane and abundant carotenoids.

Anhydrite Oil

Geochemical data for oils derived from anhydrite rock are limited (Hite and Anders, in press). Based on the work of Hite and Anders (in press), the following geochemical properties were observed: pristane/phytane less than 1; phytane/n-C_{18} greater than 1; non-HC/HC up to 30 percent; hopanes > steranes; moderate to abundant pregnane; C_{27} steranes < C_{29} steranes, minimal to moderate tricyclic terpanes (maxima C_{23}); C_{24} tetracyclic terpane (abundant) > C_{26} tricyclic terpanes; and abundant extended hopanes (maxima C_{35}). Palacas and others (1984) mentioned a number of oil shows in the Punta Gorda Anhydrite (south Florida) but stated that these shows were generally associated with carbonate-rich facies in the anhydrite zone. The authors did not know whether these oil stains were carbonate or anhydrite derived. Likewise, Clark and Philp (in press) reported on the possible evaporite origin of some oils of the Black Creek Basin, Ontario. Like the Punta Gorda source rocks, the Black Creek oil source rocks were interbedded carbonates and anhydrites.

Halite and Potash Oil

The geochemical characteristics of halite-potash oils are based primarily on data from seeps in potash mines in the Paradox (Utah) and Permian (New Mexico) basins and a seep in a halite mine (Pugwash) in New Brunswick. Additional data were obtained from oil inclusions and stained halite core from the Paradox basin (Utah)(see Hite and Anders, in press). Sulfur content in the halite-potash oils is generally less than 0.1 percent. Sulfur isotopic values approach –19 permil and carbon isotopes –30 permil. Pristane/phytane ratios were 1 or greater. If low pristane/phytane ratios (< 1) reflect depositional environment, as some have suggested (Brooks and others, 1969, Didyk and others, 1978, ten Haven and others, 1987, and others), the observed values reported by Hite and others (1984) and Hite and Anders (in press) are a bit high. On the other hand, if these pristane/phy-

tane values reflect not only the values of the depositional environment but possible input from organic matter sources outside the basin, the values could be expected to be higher. Hite and others (1984) offered corroborating data in support of transport of oxidized organic matter into the Paradox basin. Other geochemical properties of halite-potash oils are: CPI greater than 1 (C_{15}–C_{17}), but no preference for the remaining *n*-alkanes, non-HC/HC is less than 30 percent, abundance of hopanes > steranes, C_{27} steranes > C_{29} steranes, abundant diasteranes, moderate amounts of tricyclic terpanes (maxima C_{23}), C_{24} tetracyclic > C_{26} tricyclics, and moderate amounts of extended hopanes (maxima C_{31}).

SUMMARY

Evaporite depositional environments can be excellent settings for the production and preservation of hydrogen-rich organic matter. Evaporite rocks, though generally lower in organic carbon content than shales, have two to eight times as much extractable organic matter per gram of organic carbon as do shales (Tissot and Welte, 1984, p. 97). Under the proper conditions of time and temperature, much of the organic matter associated with evaporites is converted to hydrocarbons. Because of their low permeabilities, evaporite rocks make effective seals against fluid and gas migration, thus much of the generated hydrocarbon is kept locked in the evaporite sequence. However, through dissolution, bacterial reworking, and diapirism evaporates can become good reservoirs as well. We have only begun to understand the value of evaporites in relation to petroleum generation. Future work will undoubtedly challenge our present ideas and concepts.

REFERENCES CITED

Anders, D.E., and Robinson, W.E., 1971, Cycloalkane constituents of the bitumen from Green River shale: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 35, p. 661–678.

Boon, J.J., Hines, H., Burlingame, A.L., Klok, J., Rijpstra, I.C., De Leeuw, J.W., Edmunds, K.E., and Eglinton, G., 1983, Organic geochemical studies of Solar Lake laminated cyano-bacterial mats: Advances in Organic Geochemistry 1981, p. 207–227.

Brooks, J.D., Gould, K., and Smith, J., 1969, Isoprenoids in coal and petroleum: Nature, v. 222, p. 257–259.

Clark, J.P., and Philp, R.P., in press, Geochemical characterization of evaporite and carbonate depositional environments and correlation of associated crude oils in the Black Creek Basin, Alberta, Canada: Submitted to Bulletin of Canadian Petroleum Geology, May 31, 1988.

Cohen, Y., Krumbein, W.E., and Shilo, M., 1977, Solar Lake (Sinai) 2. Distribution of photosynthetic microorganisms and primary production: Limnology Oceanography, v. 21, p. 609–620.

Connan, J., 1981, Biological markers in crude oils, *in* Mason, J.F., ed., Petroleum geology in China: Tulsa, PennWell, p. 48–70 and p. 251–258.

Connan, J., Bouroullec, J., Dessort, D., and Albrecht, P., 1986, The microbial input in carbonate-anhydrite facies of a sabkha paleoenvironment from Guatemala: A molecular approach: Advances in Organic Geochemistry, v. 10, p. 25–50.

Copeland, B.J., and Jones, R.S., 1965, Community metabolism in some hypersaline waters: Texas Journal of Science, v. 17, p. 188–205.

Degens, E.T., Wong, H.K., and Finckh, P., 1978, Lake Van: Geology chemistry, hydrography. A summary, *in* Degens, E.T., and Kurlman, F., eds.: Arkana, Turkey, M.T.A. Press, p. 134–146.

Didyk, B.M., Simoneit, B.R.T., Brassell, S.C., and Eglinton, G., 1978, Organic geochemical indicators of paleoenvironmental conditions of sedimentation: Nature, v. 272, p. 216–222.

Fleet, A.J., Kelts, K., and Talbot, M.R., 1988, Lacustrine petroleum source rocks: Geological Society Special Publication 40, 391 p.

Friedman, G.M., Amiel, A.J., Bruan, M., and Miller, D.S., 1973, Generation of carbonate particles and laminites in algal mats—Example from sea-marginal hypersaline pool, Gulf of Aaaba, Red Sea: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 57, no. 3, p. 541–557.

Gardner, W.C., and Bray, E.E., 1984, Oils and source rocks of Niagaran reefs (Silurian) in the Michigan Basin, *in* Palacas, J.G., ed., Petroleum geochemistry and source-rock potential of carbonate rocks: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Studies in Geology 18, p. 33–44.

Gerdes, G., and Krumbein, W.E., 1984, Animal communities in recent potential stromatolites of hypersaline origin, *in* Cohen, Y., Castenholz, R.H., and Halvorson, H.O., eds.: Microbial mats, stromatolites: New York, Liss, p. 59–83.

Hammer, U.T., 1981, Primary production in saline lakes: Hydrobiologia, v. 81, p. 45–57.

Hite, R.J. and Anders, D.E., in press, Petroleum and evaporites, *in* Melvin, J.L., ed., Development of Sedimentology Series: New York, Elsevier.

Hite, R.J., Anders, D.E., and Ging, T.G., 1984, Organic-rich source rocks of Pennsylvanian age in the Paradox basin of Utah and Colorado, *in* Woodward, J., Meissner, F.F., and Clayton, J.L., eds., Hydrocarbon source rocks of the greater Rocky Mountain Region: Denver, Rocky Mountain Association of Geologists, p. 255–274.

Hughes, W.B., 1984, Use of thiophenic organosulfur compounds in characterizing crude oils derived from carbonate verses siliciclastic sources, *in* Palacas, J.G., ed., Petroleum geochemistry and source rock potential of carbonate rocks: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Studies in Geology, v. 18, p. 181–196.

Hunt, J.M., 1968, How gas and oil form and migrate: World Oil, v. 167, no. 4, p. 140–145, 148–150.

Imhoff, J.F., Sahl, H.G., Soliman, G.S.H., and Trüper, H.G., 1979, The Wadi Natrun: Chemical composition and microbial mass developments in alkaline brines of eutrophic desert lakes: Geomicrobiology Journal, v. 1, p. 219–234.

Javor, B.J., 1983, Planktonic standing crop and nutrients in a

saltern ecosystem: Limnology Oceanography, v. 28, p. 153–159.

Kalinko, M.K., 1974, Relation between salt content and oil-gas potential of continents and seas: International Geology Review, v. 16, p. 759–768.

Kirkland, D.W. and Evans, R., 1981, Source-rock potential of evaporitic environment: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 65, p. 181–190.

Klug, M., Boston, P., Francois, R., Gyure, R., Javor, B., Tribble, G., and Vairavamurthy, A., 1985, Sulfur reduction in sediments of marine and evaporite environments, *in* Sagen, D., ed., The global sulfur cycle: National Aeronautic and Space Administration Technical Memoir 87570, p. 128–157.

Lang, W.B., 1937, The Permian Formation of the Pecos Valley of New Mexico and Texas: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 21, no. 7, p. 833–898.

Lyons, W.B., Gaudette, H.E., and Gustafson, H.C., 1982, Dissolved organic carbon in pore waters from a hypersaline environment: Organic Geochemistry, v. 3, p. 133–135.

Mason, J.F., 1981, Petroleum geology in China: United Nations International Meeting on Petroleum Geology, Beijing, China, 1980: Tulsa, PennWell, 263 p.

Mello, M.R., Telnaes, N., Gaglianone, P.C., Chicarelli, M.I., Brassell, S.C., and Maxwell, J.R., 1988, Organic geochemical characterisation of depositional palaeoenvironments of source rocks and oils in Brazilian marginal basins, *in* Mattavelli, L. and Novelli, L., eds., Advances in Organic Geochemistry 1987: Organic Geochemistry, v. 13, p. 31–45.

Murphy, Sister M.T.J., McCormick, A., and Eglinton, G., 1967, Perhydro-β-carotene in the Green River oil shale: Science, v. 157, p. 1040–1042.

Neev, D., and Emery, K.O., 1967, The Dead Sea: depositional processes and environments of evaporites: Israel Mineral Development Geological Survey Bulletin 41, 61 p.

Nehring, R., 1978, Giant oil fields and world oil resources: Rand Corp. Report R-2284 CIA.

Nissenbaum, A., Baedecker, M.J., and Kaplan, I.R., 1972, Organic geochemistry of Dead Sea sediments: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 36, p. 709–727.

Northan, M.S., Curry, D.J., Scalan, R.S., and Parker, P.L., 1981, Stable carbon isotope ratio variations of organic matter in Orca basin sediments: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 45, p. 257–260.

Palacas, J.G., 1984, Petroleum geochemistry and source rock potential of carbonate rocks: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Studies in Geology, no. 18, p. 208.

———1988, Characteristics of carbonate source rocks of petroleum, *in* Magoon, L.B., ed., Petroleum systems of the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1870, p. 20–25.

Palacas, J.G., Anders, D.E., and King, J.D., 1984, South Florida basin—A prime example of carbonate source rocks of petroleum, *in* Palacas, J.G., ed., Petroleum geochemistry and source rock potential of carbonate rocks: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Studies in Geology 18, p. 71–96.

Palmer, S.E., and Zumberge, J.E., 1981, Organic geochemistry of Upper Miocene evaporite deposits in the Sicilian Basin, Sicily, *in* Brooks, J., ed., Organic maturation studies and fossil fuel exploration: New York, Academic Press, p. 393–426.

Parparova, G.M., Neruchev, S.G., Zhukor, A.V., and Trushkov, P.A., 1981, *in* Neruchev, S.G., ed., Catagenesis and oil and gas productivity: Nedra, Leningrad, Kalagenez e neftegazonosnost, 1981, 240 p.

Perrodon, A., 1978, Coup d'oeuil sur les provinces gechtes d'hydrocarbures: Revue Institut Francais du Pétrole, v. 33, p. 493–513.

Poole, F.G., and Claypool, G.E., 1984, Petroleum source-rock potential and crude-oil correlation in the Great Basin, *in* Woodward, J., Meissner, F.F. and Clayton, J.L., eds., Hydrocarbon source rocks of the Greater Rocky Mountain region: Denver, Rocky Mountain Association of Geologists, p. 179–229.

Powell, T.G., 1984, Some aspects of the hydrocarbon geochemistry of a Middle Devonian barrier-reef complex, western Canada, *in* Palacas, J.G., ed., Petroleum geochemistry and source rock potential of carbonate rocks: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Studies in Geology 18, p. 45–61.

Richardson, M., Arthur, M.A., Quinn, J.S., Whelan, J.K., and Katz, B.J., 1988, Depositional setting and hydrocarbon source potential of Miocene Gulf of Suez syn-rift evaporites: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 72, p. 1020–1021.

Sackett, W.M., Brooks, J.M., Bernard, B.B., Schwab, C.R., Chung, H., and Parker, R.A., 1979, A carbon inventory for Orca Basin brines and sediments: Earth and Planetary Science Letters, v. 44, p. 73–81.

Sammy, N., 1985, Biological systems in northwestern Australian solar salt and fields, *in* Schreiber, B.C., ed., Proceedings of the 6th International Symposium on Salt: Alexandria, Va, Salt Institute, v. 1, p. 207–215.

Jassen, R., Moore, C.H., and Meendsen, F.C., 1987, Distribution of hydrocarbon source potential in the Jurassic Smackover Formation: Organic Geochemistry, v. 11, no. 5, p. 379–383.

Schidlowski, M., Matzigkeit, U., Mook, W.G., and Krumbein, W.E., 1985, Carbon isotope geochemistry and ^{14}C ages of microbial mats from the Gavish Sabkha and the Solar Lake, *in* Friedman, G.M., and Krumbein, W.E., eds., Hypersaline ecosystems: The Gavish Sabkha: New York, Springer-Verlag, p. 381–401.

Spencer, R.J., Baedecker, M.J., Eugster, H.P., Forester, R.M., Goldhaber, M.B., Jones, B.F., Kelts, K., McKenzie, J., Madsen, D.B., Rettig, S.L., Rubin, M., and Bowser, C.J., 1984, Great Salt Lake and precursors, Utah: The last 30,000 years: Contributions to Mineralogy, and Petrology, v. 86, p. 321–334.

Spiro, B., Welte, D.H., Rullkötter, J., and Schaeffer, R.G., 1983, Asphalts, oils, and bituminous rocks from the Dead Sea area—A geochemical correlation study: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 67, no. 7, p. 1163–1175.

Sturm, P.A., 1980, The Great Salt Lake brine system, *in* Gwynn, J.W., ed., Great Salt Lake, a scientific historical and economic overview: p. 147–162.

Szatmari, P., 1980, The origin of oil deposits: A model based on evaporites: Anais do 30 Congresso Brasileino de Geolo-

gia, v. 1, p. 455–499.
ten Haven, H.L., de Leeuw, J.W., Rullkötter, J., and Sinninghe Damasté, 1987, Restricted utility of the pristane/phytane ratio as a palaeoenvironmental indicator: Nature, v. 330, p. 641–642.
Tissot, B., Derro, G., and Hood, A., 1978, Geochemical study of the Uinta basin: Formation of petroleum from the Green River Formation: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 42, p. 1469–1485.
Tissot, B.P., and Welte, D.H., 1984, Petroleum formation and occurrence: 2d ed., New York, Elsevier, 699 p.
von Englehardt, W., 1977, The origin of sediments and sedimentary rocks (Sedimentary Petrology, Part III): Stuttgart, Schweitzerbrt'sche Verlagsbuchhandlung.
Warren, J.K., 1986, Shallow-water evaporitic environments and their source rock potential: Journal of Sedimentary Petrology, v. 56, no. 3, p. 442–454.
Zharkov, M.A., 1981, History of Paleozoic salt accumulation: New York, Springer-Verlag, 308 p.

Effect of Biodegradation on Crude Oils

By G. Eric Michael[1]

The use of molecular parameters and bulk properties of oil or rock extract is common practice for making oil-to-oil, oil-to-source rock correlations and maturity determinations in petroleum exploration. However, biodegradation of oils from reservoir rocks or surface seeps can add to the difficulty of establishing a correlation or a level of maturity based on bulk or molecular properties. The link between biodegradation and the conditions under which biodegradation occur are important to know when interpreting hydrocarbon history. Bulk oil properties, such as API gravity, sulfur content, $\delta^{13}C$, $\delta^{34}S$, and percent saturates and aromatics, are altered with only low to moderate degradation (Seifert and others, 1984; Connan, 1984). Increased optical activity and destruction or alteration of sterane and terpane biomarkers result from more extensive biodegradation (Seifert and Moldowan, 1979).

The status of research into crude oil biodegradation is here organized relative to increasing alteration. It should be stressed that severity of biodegradation is not absolute and exceptions are common. The exceptions to the general trend in degradation is the result of many different variables such as pH, Eh, time, temperature, and microbial species. In general, the smaller and simpler the structure of an organic molecule, the more likely it is to be biodegraded.

A synopsis is also given toward biomarkers or petroleum fractions that might be of particular use in very extensively biodegraded oils. Porphyrins, tricyclic terpanes, mono-aromatic and triaromatic steroids, and pyrolysis-gas chromatography (py-GC) of asphaltene fractions appear to be good correlation tools for extensively biodegraded oils.

Table 4 summarizes biodegradation parameters commonly used in oil exploration. The effects due to biodegradation on $\delta^{13}C$ and $\delta^{34}S$ isotopes of whole oil and oil fractions are not addressed here (see Stahl, 1980, and Hartman and Hammond, 1981).

The saturated hydrocarbon fraction of oil is usually the first affected by only light biodegradation. However, exceptions to the relative order of biodegradation are still being discovered as research progresses. The typical order is preferential removal of light *n*-alkanes followed by removal of iso- and anteiso-alkanes and then isoprenoids (Alexander and others, 1983; Connan, 1984). Upon moderate to extensive degradation, polycyclic molecules are then attacked within the saturate hydrocarbon fraction.

The steranes and diasteranes are preferentially removed in the order of $C_{27} > C_{28} > C_{29}$ (Goodwin and others, 1983). Biodegradation of steranes shows stereoselective removal of the biological 5α,14α,17α 20R isomer (Rullkötter and Wendisch, 1982; McKirdy and others, 1983). The geological isomer 5α,14α,17α 20S is preferentially degraded over the 14β,17β series (Seifert and others, 1984, Chosson and Connan, 1989). Diasteranes are typically attacked after the C_{27}–C_{29} regular steranes with the 20S isomer attacked preferentially over the 20R isomer (Seifert and Moldowan, 1979). An exception to this order was found by Williams and others (1986) in south Texas crude oils, in which the steranes were not degraded but diasterane concentrations were significantly lowered. The regular steranes C_{21} and C_{20} appear to survive even after extensive biodegradation of steranes and diasteranes (Connan, 1984).

Volkman and others (1983) showed that hopane biodegradation immediately followed initial alteration of 5α,14α,17α 20R steranes. In an earlier study, Seifert and Moldowan (1979) observed hopane demethylation to be concurrent with sterane degradation. Goodwin and others (1983) showed the susceptibility of hopanes to biodegradation follow the order $C_{35} > C_{34} > C_{33} > C_{32} > C_{31} > C_{30} > C_{29}$. However, in a recent study of biodegraded tar-sand extracts, Lin and others (1989) showed biodegradation in the order $C_{30} > C_{31}$–$C_{33} > C_{34}$–C_{35}. The preferential removal of the biological 22R isomer hopane was confirmed in both studies. A number of studies have shown that extensive biodegradation of 17α(H)-hopanes produces a series of ring A/B demethylated hopanes (25-norhopanes) (Seifert and Moldowan, 1979; Rullkötter and Wendisch, 1982; Volkman and others, 1983). However, biodegradation of hopanes does not always produce ring A/B demethylated hopanes (Goodwin and others, 1983; Connan, 1984; Lin and others, 1989). Moreover, demethylated hopanes have been found in apparently nonbiodegraded oils (Philp, 1983; Volkman and others, 1983; Howell and others, 1984). The possibility that demethylated hopanes could originate from source rock has not yet been proved or disproved. Cassani and Gallango (1988) suggested that the presence of demethylated hopanes is related to the main site of biodegradation, surface or near surface

[1]U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.

Table 4. Commonly used geochemical parameters and how they are affected by biodegradation

[*, not affected or highly resistant; (?), questionable as to how the parameter is affected or at what level; HC, hydrocarbons; E, etio porphyrin; D, DPEP porphyrin; PH, phenanthrene; MPH, methylphenanthrene; DMPH, dimethylphenanthrene]

Parameter	Effect	Severity
Bulk properties, often continuous change with progressive effects		
API gravity	Decreases	Low–very high
Optical activity	Increases	Moderate–very high
Saturated HC/aromatic HC	Decreases	Low–moderate
HC/resins+asphaltenes	Decreases	Low–high
Total sulfur	Increases	Moderate–very high
Alkanes, followed by iso-,anteiso-alkanes, and isoprenoids		
Pristane/n-C_{17}	Increases	Low
Phytane/n-C_{18}	Increases	Low
Pristane/phytane	Decreases(?)	Moderate
Steranes, biodegraded after n-alkanes and isoprenoids		
Steranes/diasteranes	Decreases	High
Steranes/hopanes	Increases(?)	High–very high
5α(20S)/5α(20R)	Increases	High
C_{21}+C_{22}/C_{27}-C_{29}	Increases	High–very high
ααα-C27/ααα-C_{29}	Decreases	High
ααα-C_{28}/ααα-C_{29}	Decreases	High
Diasteranes, more resistant than C_{27}-C_{29} regular steranes		
C_{27}/C_{29}	Decreases	High–very high
20S-C_{27}/20R-C_{27}	Decreases	High–very high
Terpanes, C_{30}-C_{35} hopanes degraded while regular steranes degraded		
22S/22R hopanes	Increases	High
C_{27}-C_{29}/C_{30}-C_{35} hopanes	Increases	High–very high
Tm/Ts; norhopanes	*(?)	High–very high
Tri+tetra/pentacyclic	Increases	High–very high
Aromatics, some may be degraded prior to alkanes		
PH/MPH	Decreases	Moderate–high(?)
MPH/DMPH	Decreases	Moderate–high(?)
Mono-/tri-aromatic steroid	*	Very high
Porphyrins, appear not affected by severe biodegradation		
DPEP/ETIO	*	Very high
C_{28}E/(C_{28}E+C_{32}D)	*	Very high
Asphaltenes-resins, appear not affected by severe biodegradation		
Py-GC	*	Very high

versus subsurface, with demethylated hopanes being absent in surface or near-surface degraded samples. Moretanes, which appear more resistant than hopanes, show increased susceptibility to biodegradation with increased carbon number. The C_{29}-hopane, 17α(H)-22,29,30-trisnorhopane (Tm), and 18α(H)-22,29,30-trisnorneohopane (Ts) are particularly resistant to biodegradation (Seifert and others, 1984; Lin and others, 1989). Brooks and others (1988) found that the Ts/Tm ratio was not affected among biodegraded oil sands of western Canada. Tricyclic and tetracyclic terpanes appear to be highly resistant to biodegradation, as confirmed by Connan and others (1980), Goodwin and others (1983), and Lin and others (1989). However, tricyclic terpanes have been found to be demethylated similar to hopanes in severely biodegraded oils of the St. Aubin Asphalt, Switzerland (Connan, 1984).

The biodegradation of aromatic hydrocarbons is not as well understood as that of the saturated hydrocarbons. The general susceptibility of most aromatic compounds during aerobic degradation is monoaromatic > diaromatic > triaromatic (Connan, 1984). The best known exception to this order is the resistivity of monoaromatic and triaromatic steroids, which are resistant to biodegradation even after the C_{27}–C_{29} steranes, hopanes, and C_{27}–C_{29} diasteranes have been severely biodegraded (Volkman, 1984; Wardroper and others, 1985). It should be noted that Jones and others (1983) found that low-molecular-weight aromatic compounds apparently are not biodegraded under anaerobic conditions, but only under aerobic conditions.

Aromatic compounds that are alkyl-substituted have been shown to be biodegraded by a cooxidation pathway similar to that of *n*-alkanes (Raymond and others, 1971). In general, resistivity increases for the alkylaromatics as the number and length of alkyl substituents increase. Increased numbers of substituents, especially if adjacent, apparently cause steric hindrance effects which increase the resistance to microbes that use alkyl cooxidation. It should be mentioned, however, that oxidation of the unsubstituted ring can still take place aerobically, either by other microbes or under different environmental conditions. Different isomers of alkyl-substituted aromatics have been shown to be biodegraded at different rates (Rowland and others, 1986). An example of the previously mentioned factors in biodegradation of alkylaromatic compounds has been worked out for alkylnaphthalenes by Volkman, 1984. The order of susceptibility follows: naphthalene > 2–MN > 1–MN > 2,7–, 1,7– and 1,6–DMN > 1,3– and 2,6–DMN > 1,4– and 1,5–DMN > 1,2–DMN > 2,3–DMN and 1–EN > 2–E > 1,8–DMN (where MN is methylnaphthalene, DMN is dimethylnaphthalene, and EN is ethylnaphthalene). In some oil samples studied, the order of degradation of some alkylnapthalene isomers has been found to be switched and has been attributed to different environmental conditions (Volkman, 1984). Trimethylnaphthalenes are more resistant to biodegradation than naphthalene, MN, and DMN (Rowland and others, 1986). Biphenyl and 3-methylbiphenyl appear to both be at least as susceptible to biodegradation as the methylnaphthalenes (Rowland and others, 1986). Phenanthrene and methylphenanthrenes are more resistant to biodeg-

radation than naphthalene and methylnaphthalene (Volkman, 1984; Rowland and others, 1986). Phenanthrene appears to be more easily biodegraded than the methylphenanthrenes, of which the 9-isomer appears most resistant (Rowland and others, 1986). Sulfur content is known to increase with biodegradation, but it is unclear as to when these compounds are altered relative to other aromatic compounds. Degradation of sulfur-bearing aromatics has been reported in the literature (Connan, 1984), and benzothiophene appears to be degraded prior to dibenzothiophene (Connan, 1984).

Connan (1984) has shown that extensive alteration of both aromatics and alkanes is generally found only at the surface or at shallow depth, while in deeper reservoirs, highly altered aromatics and organosulfur compounds are associated with only mildly altered alkanes. Preferential alteration of aromatics over alkanes has also been observed in the laboratory (Rowland and others, 1986). In either case, the magnitude of unresolvable complex mixture in the GC-chromatograms for both the saturate and aromatic hydrocarbon fractions increases with increased biodegradation (Volkman and others, 1983; Brooks and others, 1988).

Considerable debate still exists among researchers as to whether the asphaltene and resin fractions are affected by biodegradation (Connan, 1984 and references therein). Teschner and Wehner (1985) demonstrated in laboratory experiments that py-GC products of asphaltenes are not affected by biodegradation. The resistance of asphaltenes to biodegradation has been further demonstrated in field studies by Rubinstein and others (1979), and Bonnamay and others (1987), who compared asphaltene pyrograms of biodegraded and nonbiodegraded oils.

Porphyrins, which appear to be highly resistant to biodegradation, are a class of biomarkers present in the more polar aromatic and resin fractions of rock extracts and crude oils. Barwise and Park (1983) found no change in porphyrin distributions for a suite of oils derived from a common source and of similar maturities but at different reservoir depths and subjected to different levels of biodegradation. Palmer (1983) demonstrated that DPEP/ETIO ratios of porphyrins are good maturity parameters when biodegradation has already affected parameters such as API gravity, *n*-alkanes, and sterane and hopane distributions. Michael and others (1989), in a study of tar sand extracts from core, found no evidence for alkyl side chain cooxidation of porphyrins, cleavage of the isocyclic ring in DPEP porphyrins, or other alteration of the tetrapyrrole ring structure, despite extensive biodegradation of steranes and hopanes.

Observed discrepancies in the order of biodegradation of compounds attests to the complication of studying a process which is undoubtedly subject to several variables. Further laboratory and field observations are required to understand how such variables as temperature, pH, Eh, growth factors, nutrient supply, and microbe species influence order and rate of biodegradation. In the future, with continued research, it could become possible to distinguish between primarily aerobic or anaerobic biodegradation processes. The ability to distinguish aerobic versus anaerobic degradation could be very useful in confirming current or paleohydrodynamic conditions of an oil reservoir.

REFERENCES CITED

Alexander, R., Kagi, R.I., Woodhouse, G.W., and Volkman, J.K., 1983, The geochemistry of some biodegraded Australian oils: Australian Petroleum Exploration Association Journal, v. 23, p. 53–63.

Barwise, A.J., and Park, P.J.D., 1983, Petroporphyrin fingerprinting as a geochemical marker, *in* Bjorøy, M. and others, eds., Advances in organic geochemistry, 1981: New York, Wiley, p. 667–674.

Bonnamay, S., Obelin, A., and Bahar, F., 1987, Geochemical study of a series of biodegraded oils: Microtexture and structure of their coked asphaltenes: Organic Geochemistry, v. 11, p. 1–13.

Brooks, P.W., Fowler, M.G., and Macqueen, R.W., 1988, Biological marker and conventional organic geochemistry of oil sands/heavy oils, Western Canada Basin: Organic Geochemistry, v. 12, p. 519–538.

Cassani, F., and Gallango, O., 1988, Organic geochemistry of Venezuelan heavy and extra heavy crude oils: Fourth UNITAR/UNDP conference on heavy crude and tar sands, Preprint no. 165.

Chosson, P., and Connan, J., 1989, In vitro biodegradation of steranes [abs.]: American Chemical Society, Division of Geochemistry, 197th American Chemical Society National Meeting, Dallas, Texas, April 9–14, 1989.

Connan, J., 1984, Biodegradation of crude oils in reservoirs, *in* Brooks, J., and Welte, D.H., eds., Advances in petroleum geochemistry: London, Academic Press, v. 1, p. 299–335.

Connan, J., Restle, A., and Albrecht, P., 1980, Biodegradation of crude oil in the Aquitane Basin, *in* Douglas, A.G., and Maxwell, J.R., eds., Advances in organic geochemistry, 1979: Oxford, Pergamon Press, p. 1–17.

Goodwin, N.S., Park, P.J.D., and Rawlinson, A.P., 1983, Crude oil biodegradation under simulated and natural conditions, *in* Bjoroy, M., and others, eds., Advances in organic geochemistry, 1981: New York, Wiley, p. 650–658.

Hartman, B., and Hammond, D.E., 1981, The use of carbon and sulfur isotopes as correlation parameters for the source identification of beach tar in the southern California borderland: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 45, p. 309–319.

Howell, V.J., Connan, J., and Aldridge, A.K., 1984, Tentative identification of demethylated tricyclic terpanes in nonbiodegraded and slightly biodegraded crude oils from the Los Llanos Basin, Colombia: Organic Geochemistry, v. 6, p. 83–92.

Jones, D.M., Douglas, A.G., Parkes, R.J., Taylor, J., Giger, W., and Schaffner, C., 1983, The recognition of biodegraded

petroleum-derived aromatic hydrocarbons in Recent marine sediments: Marine Pollution Bulletin, v. 14, p. 103–108.

Lin, L.H., Michael, G.E., Kovachev, G., Zhu, H., Philp, R.P., and Lewis, C.A., 1989, Biodegradation of tar-sand bitumens from the Ardmore and Anadarko basins, Carter County, Oklahoma - I: Organic Geochemistry.

McKirdy, D.M., Aldridge, A.K., and Ypma, P.J.M., 1983, A geochemical comparison of some crude oils from pre-Ordovician carbonate rocks, *in* Bjorøy, M. and others, eds., Advances in organic geochemistry, 1981: New York, Wiley, p. 99–107.

Michael, G.E., Lin, L.H., Philp, R.P., Lewis, C.A., and Jones, P.J., 1989, Biodegradation of tar-sand bitumens from the Ardmore/Anadarko Basins, Oklahoma. II—Correlation of oils, tar sands and source rocks: Organic Geochemistry.

Palmer, S.E., 1983, Porphyrin distributions in degraded oils from Columbia [abs.]: American Chemical Society National Meeting, Washington, D.C., August 28-September 2, Division of Geochemistry, Abstract 23.

Philp, R.P., 1983, Correlation of crude oils from the San Jorges Basin, Argentina: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 47, p. 267–276.

Raymond, R.L., Jamison, V.W., and Hudson, J.O., 1971, Hydrocarbon oxidation in microbial systems: Lipids, v. 6, p. 453–457.

Rowland, S.J., Alexander, R., Kagi, R.I., Jones, D.M., and Douglas, A.G., 1986, Microbial degradation of aromatic components of crude oils: A comparison of laboratory and field observations: Organic Geochemistry, v. 9, p. 153–161.

Rubinstein, I., Spyckerlle, C., and Strausz, O.P., 1979, Pyrolysis of asphaltenes: A source of geochemical information: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 43, p. 1–66.

Rullkötter, J., and Wendisch, 1982, Microbial alteration of 17α(H)-hopanes in Madagascar asphalts—Removal of C_{10} methyl group and ring opening: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 46, p. 1545–1553.

Seifert, W.K., and Moldowan, J.M., 1979, The effect of biodegradation on steranes and terpanes in crude oils: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 43, p. 111–126.

Seifert, W.K., Moldowan, J.M., and Demaison, G.J., 1984, Source correlation of biodegraded oils: Organic Geochemistry, v. 6, p. 633–643.

Stahl, W.J., 1980, Compositional changes and $^{13}C/^{12}C$ fractionation during the degradation of hydrocarbons by bacteria: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 44, p. 1903–1907.

Teschner, W., and Wehner, H., 1985, Chromatographic investigations on biodegraded crude oils: Chromatographia, v. 20, p. 407–416.

Volkman, J.K., 1984, Biodegradation of aromatic hydrocarbons in crude oils from the Barrow sub-basin of Western Australia: Organic Geochemistry, v. 6, p. 619–632.

Volkman, J.K., Alexander, R., Kagi, R.I., and Woodhouse, G.W., 1983, Demethylated hopanes in crude oils and their application in petroleum geochemistry: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 47, p. 785–794.

Wardroper, A.M.K., Hoffman, C.F., Maxwell, J.R., Barwise, A.J.G., Goodwin, N.S., and Park, P.J.D., 1985, Crude oil biodegradation under simulated and natural conditions-II. Aromatic steroid hydrocarbons: Organic Geochemistry, v. 6, p. 605–618.

Williams, J.A., Bjorøy, M., Dolcater, D.L., Winters, J.C., 1986, Biodegradation in South Texas Eocene oil—Effects on aromatics and biomarker series, *in* Leythaeuser, D., and Rullkötter, J., eds., Advances in organic geochemistry, 1985: Oxford, Pergamon, p. 451–461.

Heavy Oil and Natural Bitumen

By Richard F. Meyer[1]

INTRODUCTION

Original reserves of heavy oil in the United States are estimated to be 30.2 billion barrels and undiscovered resources are 4.3 billion barrels. In-place bitumen in the United States is estimated to be 22.9 billion barrels of demonstrated resources and 33.7 billion barrels of inferred resources (Meyer and Duford, 1989). An increasing need for new oil supplies indicates that increased research and exploration are necessary to make the heavy oil and bitumen fill at least a portion of this need.

Research directed toward heavy oil and natural bitumen in the United States is at a low level, except as reported in the U.S. Department of Energy symposia on Enhanced Oil Recovery and a few joint projects of the Department with industry. Most heavy oil in the United States has been and is produced in California. In 1988, 466,000 barrels of heavy oil per day (bbl/d) were produced in the United States by enhanced oil recovery methods: 97.8 percent by steam injection, 1.4 percent by in situ combustion, and small amounts by using chemical additives (Meyer and Duford, 1989). For 1979, Marchant and others (1981) reported five natural bitumen recovery projects: two by steam, two by combustion, and one utilizing mining. For 1985, Marchant (1988) reported 34 in situ and nine mining projects. Today there are no active recovery projects. Fortunately, two other Western Hemisphere nations, Venezuela for heavy oil and Canada for bitumen, have already made major strides in solving some of the research problems associated with the exploitation of these commodities.

DEFINITIONS

Definitions of heavy crude and bitumen are based upon either their physical or chemical properties or on a combination of the two. Although chemical analysis is rigorous, it is time consuming and the chemical composition is often reflected in the more easily measured physical attributes. The most readily available of these physical characteristics are the API gravity and the viscosity, and either or both of these are commonly used to set the limits of heavy crude and natural bitumen. The API gravity is expressed on a scale in which 10° is equivalent to a specific gravity of 1 and a density of 0.934 g/cm^3. Viscosity, the resistance to flow, may be expressed in poises (pascal·seconds), the quotient of shearing stress and velocity gradient. Heavy oil (Martinez, 1984; Byramjee, 1983) is defined as that oil having API gravity of 20° and extra heavy oil as that below 10°, regardless of viscosity. Natural bitumen is any oil having a viscosity greater than 10,000 centipoises (cP). Briggs and others (1988) include bitumen with heavy oil which is then defined as any oil more viscous than 100 cP. Refiners define heavy oil as any oil which will yield 15 percent residuum at a temperature of 1,010 °F (National Petroleum Council, 1980; Meyer, 1987). Another type of classification (Hunt, 1979) is based on the fact that bitumens are soluble in carbon disulfide, whereas pyrobitumens are neither soluble nor fusible. Among the bitumens, the application of heat discriminates natural asphalt, which fuses, from the asphaltites—such as gilsonite—which are difficult to fuse, and the mineral waxes—such as ozocerite—which are easily fused. Natural asphalt is by far the most important quantitatively and is a potential source of synthetic oil. Unless specifically stated otherwise, the term "natural bitumen" refers to, and is synonymous with, "natural asphalt." Connan and van der Weide (1978) point out the weakness of classifications based on physical attributes; these physical characteristics may result from immaturity of thermal evolution or postexpulsion alteration as well as from uninterrupted maturation. Nonetheless, a classification based upon physical characteristics (Martinez, 1984) is useful for the compilation of statistical data. The compiler must recognize that such a classification neither necessarily indicates the origin of the oil nor distinguishes between immature oil and oil that which has been subjected to alteration. The origin bears upon the methods employed for resource assessment and on the recovery of the oil from known deposits.

RESOURCES

In the United States, about one-third of the original reserves of heavy oil, about 10 billion barrels, are in giant fields having recoverable original reserves of 500 million barrels each; 8 of the 10 giant fields are in California (Meyer and Duford, 1989). Heavy oil is identified in 44 U.S. petroleum provinces, of which 5 contain

[1]U.S. Geological Survey, Reston, Va.

giant fields and 4 contain offshore fields. Bitumen deposits are found in 17 petroleum provinces. Although many of the deposits have served as sources of direct-use asphalt in the past, no natural bitumen is being produced in 1989. Of the 56.6 billion barrels of in-place bitumen in the United States (Meyer and Duford, 1989), two-thirds is contained in four provinces: the Uinta basin (23 percent), the Arctic Coastal Plain basin (19 percent), the Warrior basin (14 percent), and the Paradox basin (11 percent).

CHEMISTRY

Typically, the heavy oils and natural bitumens have high molecular weight and viscosity, low *n*-alkanes, high asphaltenes and resins, high sulfur, and high trace metals, especially nickel and vanadium. The composition of heavy oil and bitumen is a function of source rock type, thermal maturation, and alteration, three processes that operate singly or in combination. Generally, a carbonate source rock expells oil that contains more nitrogen-sulfur-oxygen (NSO) compounds than a siliciclastic source rock. Low maturity is indicated by few hydrocarbons, many NSO compounds, high molecular weight, high sulfur to nitrogen ratio (S/N), low API gravity, and high viscosity (Waples, 1985). Silverman (1978) stated succinctly that maturation leads to an increase in saturate-hydrocarbon and gasoline contents and a decrease in NSO compounds, whereas degradation has the opposite effect, *n*-alkanes are reduced and the asphaltene and NSO contents are greatly increased.

The alteration of an oil after it is expressed from a source bed can take many forms. Cracking, in which large molecules are reduced to smaller ones, is a part of the maturation process due to increase in temperature and pressure consequent to greater depth of burial and may eventually lead to thermogenic gas and ultimately to graphite. The effects of temperature on the maturation of organic matter and petroleum are well known (Hunt, 1979; Waples, 1985), and temperature has been correlated with many indices of maturation (Heroux and others, 1979). Pressure effects have been both acknowledged (Tissot and others, 1974) and denied (Hunt, 1979) as an important factor in petroleum generation. Both hydrostatic and lithostatic pressure increase with depth, as does temperature; pressure also is basic to the cracking of oil in refineries. Pressure therefore appears to play a significant role in petroleum generation and, in particular, to the evolution of heavy oil and bitumen and should be accorded research effort. Nonthermal alteration leads to degradation of the oil through the processes of deasphalting, water washing, and biodegradation. Deasphalting is the precipitation of the large, heavy asphaltene molecules by natural gas and gravity segregation, often forming a tar mat at the oil-water contact. Water washing is a process of selective dissolution of certain lighter components of the oil by water, but the effects are generally small (Waples, 1985) and will not lead to development of a tar mat (Lafargue and Barker, 1988). Biodegradation by bacteria in the oxygenated zone is the most important degradation process. It may commence during secondary migration through the carrier bed from the source bed to the reservoir but most commonly takes place after the entrapped oil is elevated into the zone of oxidation. The result is a surface or near-surface natural bitumen deposit. Waples (1985) and Connan (1984) have summarized the effects of biodegradation. In order of preference the bacteria attack: (1) the *n*-alkanes, (2) the long alkyl side-chains, (3) the single methyl branches or the widely spaced branches, (4) the isoprenoids, and (5) the polycyclic alkanes. No evidence indicates that bacteria affect porphyrins, asphaltenes, or the heavy NSO compounds. Thus, alkanes may be reduced from their normal 60 percent of the oil to 20 percent, with consequent increase in aromatics and polar compounds. Sulfur may be increased proportionately by hydrocarbon removal and by sulphate reduction.

The heavy oil and bitumen are highly viscous because of their high content of asphaltenes. In laboratory analysis with solvents, *n*-pentane precipitates the asphaltenes. Condensate, including pentane, is also used as a diluent to move heavy oil and bitumen through pipelines (Todd, 1988). Consequently, the volume of solvent mixed with the oil is critical to prevent precipitating asphaltenes that would clog pipelines and disrupt delivery of the oil to refineries. Research is being conducted on diluents to determine the correct amount to be used to avoid precipitation and on the positive effects of adding carbon dioxide (Fuhr and others, 1989) as well. Excessive asphaltenes tend to foul refinery crude exchangers (Dickakian and Seay, 1988) and other equipment. Research is required on the role of asphaltenes not only in condensate mixtures but also on refinery feed stocks when two or more asphaltic crudes are to be combined.

Asphaltene precipitation is manifested in another way by the formation of tar mats in numerous oil fields. Haldorsen and others (1988) describe the tar mat in the Prudhoe Bay field. Hirschberg (1988) discusses compositional variations in the fluid columns of reservoirs, citing the tar mat as the extreme example. The tar mat can seriously impede the flow of water in the reservoir, either naturally or when waterflood recovery is attempted. The presence of tar mats reduces or hampers oil recovery.

CATALYSIS

In refining crude oil, catalytic cracking is used in preference to thermal cracking because reaction rates are faster, lower temperatures are needed, less coke and

gas are produced, and more branched alkanes result, yielding a higher octane rating (Neumann and Rahimian, 1984). The aluminum silicate catalysts which made catalytic cracking economic consisted of naturally occurring bentonite, later succeeded by synthetic montmorillonite. In nature, according to Waples (1985), the role of catalysis is not proved but probably varies with the particular clay mineral. It is generally accepted that the result of petroleum maturation reflects the nature of the original organic matter that formed the kerogen of the source rock, the temperatures to which the source rock and, later, any expelled petroleum, were exposed, and the geologic time involved during which the genetic process takes place. Goldstein (1983) makes a compelling argument for the place of geocatalytic reactions in the generation of oil. He identifies two energetically difficult reactions required for oil formation: shortening of alkane chains by cracking to produce gases and light oils, and fatty acid decarboxylation to yield *n*-alkanes. Without catalysts, these reactions can only take place in the laboratory at temperatures above 752 °C. Such reactions do, in fact, occur naturally. Hunt (1979) reviews the subject of geocatalysis, concluding that activation energies for many reactions require something other than straight thermal cracking, including lower energies involved in simultaneous reactions. Other explanations may be possible for the differences between laboratory experiments and extrapolations into geologic time. Milner and others (1977) presented views for and against natural catalysis but suggested that geocatalytic cracking may be a factor. Freund and Keleman (1989), on the basis of studies of low-temperature pyrolysis, believe that the time required for natural oil generation can be explained by measured high-temperature kinetics, which are stated to be valid at temperatures as low as 209 °C. They feel that geocatalysis may be possible but is not necessary. However, 209 °C is still at or near the upper limit of the oil generation zone. Additional research is necessary to establish whether geocatalysis is effective in the oil-generation process.

OIL SEEPS

Oil seeps are common throughout the world. They provided a source of bitumen in antiquity for caulk and cement and were one of the earliest surface indicators to be used in oil exploration. Lists of some of the better-known seeps are given in Abraham (1960), Forrer (1986), and Meyer and Fleming (1986). Thompson (1934), Hunt (1979), and Forrer (1986) described the characteristics of oil seeps and their use for direct exploration and as guides to shallow buried deposits. Seeps may owe their origin to various causes: exhumed and degraded conventional oil deposits, exhumed immature deposits, or the surface manifestation of a liquid oil deposit whose carrier bed has been breached by erosion and is now exposed at the surface. Knowledge of the characteristics of individual seeps bears directly upon the proper interpretation of petroleum systems involving heavy oil and natural bitumen deposits.

UNDISCOVERED RESOURCES

There is no certain way to assess the quantity of the undiscovered resource of heavy oil, even more than light oil, in a given basin. The method used by Meyer and others (1984) was simply to determine the proportion of reserves in a basin that were heavy oils and apply that proportion to the total undiscovered oil, as determined by others (for example, Dolton and others, 1981). These assessments are inaccurate because conventional assessment methods do not include heavy oil, except in fields under production at the time of the estimate, or bitumen deposits (McKie, 1982), and the methods themselves have specific deficiencies. Procter and others (1982) devised a method of play analysis which they have applied to heavy oil in Canada. A review of heavy oil assessment methods by Meyer and Schenk (1986) stresses the need for considering material balances to account for the loss of as much as 80 percent of the original oil through various degradation processes. However, the estimation of possible amounts of undiscovered oil alone is not enough to be useful for planning. Some idea of the potential for recovery must also be applied. Innovative research on this subject is reported by Connan and Coustau (1987). Their studies emphasized the necessity for distinguishing immature oil (Petersen and Hickey, 1987; Clayton, 1989) from mature, but degraded, oil. If degradation preceded accumulation or if the oil is immature, the oil will contain large molecules and will be highly viscous. Thus, it can saturate only the most permeable and porous zones in the reservoir, making recovery by steam flooding efficient. But if the oil was originally light, it could have entered the less permeable and less porous zones in the reservoir. After degradation, these zones contain very viscous oil and are very difficult to sweep efficiently, which may lower the recovery to or below the economic limit, effectively reducing the recoverable oil assessment.

The assessment of natural bitumen resources is more straightforward than for heavy oil because the deposits are mostly at the surface or occur at shallow depths in proximity to surficial deposits. Historically, most such deposits have been located by surface geological exploration; however, means are now available to search for natural bitumens by remote sensing (Cloutis, 1989). Moore (1984) summarized the ways in which asphalt deposits (tar seals) can be utilized for exploration by indicating buried deposits either below the seals, along basin margins, or in stratigraphic traps.

The role of economics is extremely important in determining feasibility of recovery from bitumen deposits. The deposit grade and size are of fundamental importance (Meyer and Schenk, 1986; Earley, 1987).

ASSESSMENT BY PETROLEUM SYSTEM

The concept of petroleum systems (Magoon, 1988) offers the best opportunity for assessment of heavy oil and natural bitumen resources because the development of such systems is based on geological fact and intuition rather than on simple statistical data manipulation. Evaluation factors include the level of system certainty; source rock age, lithology, thickness and kerogen type; reservoir-rock age, lithology, and thickness; and overburden age, lithology, and thickness. Information on hydrocarbon maturity, degradation, chemical attributes, and richness may readily be added for heavy oil and bitumen. The ages can be established by use of the U.S. Geological Survey geologic names handbook (Swanson and others, 1981), and derived computer printout sheets can provide the appropriate geologic province name. The timespans for generation, accumulation, and degradation can be estimated from geologic time scales, such as contained in Harland and others (1982). These data, and information from available boreholes, will provide a data base for an accurate assessment of the potential volume of petroliferous sediment. Pusey (1973) and McDowell (1975) outlined the general principles of basin-potential evaluation.

Cooles and others (1986) gave formulas for calculating petroleum masses generated and expelled from source rocks. They concluded that rich source rocks having organic carbon in excess of 1.5 percent may lead to the expulsion of 60 to 90 percent of oil generated, whereas expulsion from leaner source rocks is correspondingly less efficient. Tannenbaum and others (1987) showed that in the conversion of light oil to heavy oil as much as 80 percent of the oil volume may be lost. Moshier and Waples (1985) demonstrated that, in addition to those present in the rock body, in which the Athabasca reservoir rocks are located, additional source rocks are required to supply the quantity of petroleum present in the Athabasca deposits. Similarly, Nalivkin and others (1984) calculated that 65 percent of the oil that originally migrated into the Olenek deposit in Siberia was lost by degradation. The amounts of oil lost by degradation in the world are staggering. Hunt (1979) estimated that the asphalt deposits of the world contain about 2 trillion barrels of oil, a very conservative estimate. He calculated that, had these deposits originally been of 35° API gravity oil, their volume would have been 9.5 trillion barrels. Use of the petroleum system approach will make possible the estimation of the age and span of time in years when such oil was lost.

OTHER POTENTIAL RESOURCES

Heavy oil and natural bitumen are rich in organometallic complexes as well as sulfur. In the United States in 1987, 58 percent of sulfur production was derived from petroleum operations, 30 percent from Frasch native sulfur plants, and only 12 percent as byproduct of metals plants. World vanadium production exclusive of the United States, where data are proprietary, was 34,000 short tons in 1987 from slags, concentrates, and ores. Production from petroleum refineries from residues, ashes, and spent catalysts amounted to 925 tons in Japan and 2,504 tons in the United States, mainly from refineries processing imported Venezuelan heavy crudes, which are very high in metals. Vanadium is also recovered from petroleum residues in the Federal Republic of Germany and other European countries, and USSR (U.S. Bureau of Mines, 1989). Gribkov (1989) has made the point that the nonhydrocarbons may make some bitumen deposits economic and may, in some deposits, be of greater value than the bitumen. In a current study, C.A. Palmer (written communcation), based on analyses of 27 samples from 10 natural bitumen and heavy oil deposits, reports identifying 38 trace metals plus sulfur. The sulfur is most common, with a maximum determination of 69,000 parts per million.. Metals with high determined values include iron, potassium, sodium, vanadium, strontium, nickel, barium, and zinc.

CONCLUSION

Research on heavy oil and bitumen may expand avenues of interest to many petroleum disciplines. The geochemist may gain increased knowledge of the evolution of petroleum hydrocarbons, particularly the role of natural catalysts. The geologist may improve methods for the assessment of resource levels and attain characterization of the oils and reservoir rocks to assist in enhanced recovery. The chemist may achieve detailed analysis of the hydrocarbon's chemical composition to aid in planning for transportation and refining. And the commodity specialist may study the petroleum's nonhydrocarbon components to seek potential new sources of valuable commodities.

REFERENCES CITED

Abraham, Herbert, 1960, Asphalts and allied substances, 6th ed., v. 1: New York, Van Nostrand, 370 p.

Byramjee, R.J., 1983, Heavy crudes and bitumen categorized to help assess resources, techniques: Oil & Gas Journal, v. 81, no. 27, p. 78–82.

Briggs, P.J., Baron, R.P., Fulleylove, R.J., and Wright, M.S., 1988, Development of heavy-oil reservoirs: Journal of Petroleum Technology, v. 40, no. 2, p. 206–214.

Clayton, J.L., 1989, Geochemical evidence for Paleozoic oil in Lower Cretaceous O sandstone, northern Denver basin: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 73, no. 8, p. 977–988.

Cloutis, E.A., 1989, Spectral reflectance properties of hydrocarbons: remote-sensing implications: Science, v. 245, no. 4914, p. 165–168.

Connan, Jacques, 1984, Biodegradation of crude oils in reservoirs, *in* Brooks, Jim, and Welte, Dietrich, eds., Advances in petroleum geochemistry, v. 1: London, Academic Press, p. 299–335.

Connan, Jacques, and Coustau, Henri, 1987, Influence of the geological and geochemical characteristics of heavy oils on their recovery, *in* Meyer, R.F., ed., Exploration for heavy crude oil and natural bitumen: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Studies in Geology 25, p. 261–279.

Connan, Jacques, and van der Weide, B.M., 1978, Thermal evolution of natural asphalts, *in* Chilingarian, G.V., and Yen, T.F., eds., Bitumens, asphalts, and tar sands: Amsterdam, Elsevier, p. 27–55.

Cooles, G.P., Mackenzie, A.S., and Quigley, T.M., 1986, Calculation of petroleum masses generated and expelled from source rocks: Organic Geochemistry, v. 10, nos. 1–3, p. 235–245.

Dickakian, Ghaz, and Seay, Steve, 1988, Asphaltene precipitation primary crude exchanger fouling mechanism: Oil & Gas Journal, v. 86, no. 10, p. 47–50.

Dolton, G.L.,Carlson, K.H., Charpentier, R.R., Coury, A.B., Crovelli, R.A., Frezon, S.E., Khan, A.S., Lister, J.H., McMullin, R.H., Pike, R.S., Powers, R.B., Scott, E.W., and Varnes, K.L., 1981, Estimates of undiscovered recoverable conventional resources of oil and gas in the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 860, 87 p.

Earley, J.W., 1987, Economic factors in near-surface heavy oil/tar sand mining, *in* Meyer, R.F., ed., Exploration for heavy crude and natural bitumen: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Studies in Geology 25, p. 669–672.

Forrer, Martin, 1986, Oil and gas seepages with reference to developing countries, *in* Meyer, R.F., ed., Shallow oil and gas resources: Houston, Gulf, p. 45–58.

Freund, H., and Keleman, S.R., 1989, Low-temperature pyrolysis of Green River kerogen: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 73, no. 8, p. 1011–1017.

Fuhr, B.J., Klein, L.L., Komishke, B.D., Reichert, C., and Ridley, R.K., 1989, Effects of diluents and carbon dioxide on asphaltene flocculation in heavy oil solutions, *in* Meyer, R.F., ed., UNITAR/UNDP International conference on heavy crude and tar sands, 4th, 1988, Edmonton, proceedings: Edmonton, Alberta Oil Sands Technology and Research Authority, v. 2, p. 637–646.

Goldstein, T.P., 1983, Geocatalytic reactions in formation and maturation of petroleum: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 67, no. 1, p. 152–159.

Gribkov, V.V., 1989, Issues in the complex development of natural bitumens and heavy oils, *in* Meyer, R.F., ed., UNITAR/UNDP International conference on heavy crude and tar sands, 4th, 1988, Edmonton, proceedings: Edmonton, Alberta Oil Sands Technology and Research Authority, v. 2, p. 13–14.

Haldorsen, H.H., Mayson, H.J., and Haworth, G.M., 1988, The heavy oil/tar mat in the Prudhoe Bay Field, Alaska, *in* Meyer, R.F., ed., UNITAR/UNDP International conference on heavy crude and tar sands, 3rd, 1985, Long Beach: Edmonton, Alberta Oil Sands Technology and Research Authority, p. 963–978.

Harland, W.B., Cox, A.V., Llewellyn, P.G., Picton, C.A.G., Smith, A.G., and Walters, R., 1982, A geologic time scale: Cambridge, Cambridge University Press, 131 p.

Heroux, Yvon, Chagnon, Andre, and Bertrand, Rudolf, 1979, Compilation and correlation of major thermal maturation indicators: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 63, no. 12, p. 2128–2144.

Hirschberg, Avraham, 1988, Role of asphaltenes in compositional grading of a reservoir's fluid column: Journal of Petroleum Technology, v. 40, no. 1, p. 89–94.

Hunt, J.M., 1979, Petroleum geochemistry and geology: San Francisco, Freeman, 617 p.

Lafargue, Eric, and Barker, Colin, 1988, Effect of water washing on crude oil compositions: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 72, no. 3, p. 263–276.

Magoon, L.B., 1988, The petroleum system—A classification scheme for research, exploration, and resource assessment, *in* Magoon, L.B., ed., Petroleum systems in the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1870, p. 2–15.

Marchant, L.C., 1988, U.S. tar sand oil recovery prospects—1985, *in* Meyer, R.F., ed., UNITAR/UNDP International conference on heavy crude and tar sands, 3rd, 1985, Long Beach: Edmonton, Alberta Oil Sands Technology and Research Authority, p. 933–940.

Marchant, L.C., Cupps, C.Q., and Stosur, George, 1981, Current activity in oil production from U.S. tar sands, *in* Meyer, R.F., and Steele, C.T., eds., The future of heavy crude and tar sands: New York, McGraw-Hill, p. 477–488.

Martinez, A.R., 1984, Report of working group on definitions, *in* Meyer, R.F., Wynn, J.C., and Olson, J.C., eds., The future of heavy crude and tar sands, Second International Conference: New York, McGraw-Hill, p. lxvii–lxviii.

McDowell, A.N., 1975, What are the problems in estimating the oil potential of a basin?: Oil & Gas Journal, v. 73, no. 23, p. 85–90.

McKie, J.W., 1982, Heavy oil: its significance for the U.S. energy balance: Journal of Energy and Development, v. 7, no. 2, p. 151–162.

Meyer, R.F., 1987, Prospects for heavy crude oil development: Energy Exploration & Exploitation, v. 5, no. 1, p. 27–55.

Meyer, R.F., and Duford, J.M., 1989, Resources of heavy oil and natural bitumen worldwide, *in* Meyer, R.F., ed., UNITAR/UNDP International conference on heavy crude and tar sands, 4th, 1988, Edmonton, proceedings: Edmonton, Alberta Oil Sands Technology and Research Authority, v. 2, p. 277–293.

Meyer, R.F., and Fleming, M.L., 1986, Survey of world shallow oil and gas, *in* Meyer, R.F., ed., Shallow oil and gas resources: Houston, Gulf, p. 133–172.

Meyer, R.F., Fulton, P.A., and Dietzman, W.D., 1984, A preliminary estimate of world heavy crude oil and bitu-

men resources, *in* Meyer, R.F., Wynn, J.C., and Olson, J.C., eds., The future of heavy crude and tar sands, Second International Conference: New York, McGraw-Hill, p. 97–158.

Meyer, R.F., and Schenk, C.J., 1986, The assessment of heavy crude oil and bitumen resources, *in* Rice, D.D., ed., Oil and gas assessment—Methods and applications: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Studies in Geology 21, p. 203–222.

Milner, C.W.D., Rogers, M.A., and Evans, C.R., 1977, Petroleum transformations in reservoirs: Journal of Geochemical Exploration, v. 7, no. 2, p. 101–153.

Moore, L.V., 1984, Significance, classification of asphaltic material in petroleum exploration: Oil & Gas Journal, v. 82, no. 41, p. 109–112.

Moshier, S.O., and Waples, D.W., 1985, Quantitative evaluation of Lower Cretaceous Mannville Group as source rock for Alberta's oil sands: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 69, no. 2, p. 161–172.

National Petroleum Council, 1980, Refinery flexibility: Washington, D.C., 261 p.

Nalivkin, V.D., Gol'dberg, I.S., Kruglikov, N.M., Lazarev, V.S., Sakhibgareyev, G.P., Sverchkov, G.P., and Simakov, S.N., 1984, Destructive processes affecting oil and gas pools and estimation of the hydrocarbon loss: International Geology Review, v. 26, no. 10, p. 1185–1198.

Neumann, H-J., and Rahimian, Iradj, 1984, Petroleum refining: Stuttgart, Enke, 126 p.

Petersen, N.F., and Hickey, P.J., 1987, California Plio-Miocene oils: evidence of early generation, *in* Meyer, R.F., ed., Exploration for heavy crude and natural bitumen: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Studies in Geology 25, p. 351–359.

Procter, R.M., Lee, P.J., and Taylor, G.L., 1982, Methodology of petroleum resource evaluation: Geological Survey of Canada manual prepared for the Third Circum-Pacific Energy and Mineral Resources Conference Petroleum Resource and Assessment Workshop and Symposium [not paginated].

Pusey, W.C., III, 1973, How to evaluate potential gas and oil source rocks: World Oil, v. 176, no. 5, p. 71–75.

Silverman, S.R., 1978, Geochemistry and origin of natural heavy-oil deposits, *in* Chilingarian, G.V., and Yen,T.F., eds., Bitumen, asphalts, and tar sands: Amsterdam, Elsevier, p. 17–25.

Swanson, R.W., Hubert, M.L., Luttrell, G.W., and Jussen, V.M., 1981, Geologic names of the United States through 1975: U.S.Geological Survey Bulletin 1535, 643 p.

Tannenbaum, E., Starinsky, A., and Aizenshtat, Z., 1987, Light-oils transformation to heavy oils and asphalt—Assessment of the amounts of hydrocarbons removed and hydrological-geological control of the process, *in* Meyer, R.F., ed., Exploration for heavy crude and natural bitumen: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Studies in Geology 25, p. 221–231.

Thompson, A.B., 1934, The economic value of surface petroleum manifestations: World Petroleum Congress, 1st, 1933, London, Proceedings, v. 1, p. 241–245.

Tissot, B., Durand, B., Espitalie, J., and Combaz, A., 1974, American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 58, no. 3, p. 499–506.

Todd, C.M., 1988, Downstream planning and innovation for heavy oil development—A producer's perspective: Journal of Canadian Petroleum Technology, v. 27, no. 1, p. 79–86.

U.S. Bureau of Mines, 1989, Minerals yearbook, 1987, v. 1, Metals and minerals: Washington, D.C., U.S. Government Printing Office, 990 p.

Waples, D.W., 1985, Geochemistry in petroleum exploration: Boston, International Human Resources Development, 232 p.

Natural Gas

By Keith A. Kvenvolden[1]

The principal hydrocarbon component in natural gas is methane, and a common diluent of this methane is nitrogen. These two components of natural gas are the focus of this discussion, the purpose of which is (1) to describe briefly the current thinking about their origins, (2) to redefine terms associated with the origin of methane, and (3) to suggest possible implications with regard to exploration strategies.

It is now widely recognized that methane in natural gas has multiple origins (Schoell, 1988). Most methane in natural gas has the same ultimate source, namely biologically formed organic matter. The reason that methane is said to have multiple origins is that a variety of processes act on this organic matter at varying levels of intensity.

Methane is predominantly a product of the conversion of organic matter by both biochemical (microbial) and thermochemical reactions taking place in different temperature regions. Methane that is ultimately derived from organic matter should be termed biogenic as opposed to abiogenic methane, which forms by chemical processes that do not involve organic matter. This definition of biogenic methane is different from that which has been commonly used, for example, by Schoell (1980, 1983) and Rice and Claypool (1981). In the past, the term biogenic described methane formed by microbial processes; in the future, this gas should be referred to as microbial (bacterial) methane (Jenden and Kaplan, 1986; Coleman and others, 1988). That methane which results from the thermochemical conversion of organic matter is a kind of biogenic gas that should continue to be called thermogenic methane, and methane produced by this process forms about 80 percent of the commercial deposits of natural gas; the remaining 20 percent of commercial deposits contain microbial gas (Rice and Claypool, 1981).

The various processes which lead to the formation of methane can often be differentiated by means of carbon and hydrogen isotopic compositions (fig. 5). For example, the formation of microbial methane follows two principal pathways: CO_2 reduction and fermentation (Jenden and Kaplan, 1986; Martens and others, 1986; Whiticar and others, 1986; Burke and others, 1988). Fermentation-derived methane is characterized by its depletion in the heavier isotope of hydrogen, that is, deuterium (fig. 5). The methanogenic pathways can operate simultaneously but are quantitatively important at different stages of sediment deposition. The pathways are generally independent of depositional environment but can be seasonally controlled. The fermentation processes are quantitatively more important in recently deposited sediments and swamps, whereas CO_2-reduction processes are more common in older sediments; microbial methane in commercial gas fields usually is the product of the CO_2-reduction pathway. Temperature, organic substrate, and age may be the major factors controlling the relative importance of the two pathways (Schoell, 1988).

Thermogenic methane is found in a wide variety of geologic settings and sedimentary basins, and it has a wide range of isotopic compositions (fig. 5), with oil-associated methane having generally more negative isotopic values and non-associated methane having more positive values. These isotopic compositions seem to be controlled by the geologic history of the basins and include such factors as the extent of conversion of organic matter and the timing of gas expulsion, migration, and trapping (Schoell, 1988). Isotopic compositions of thermogenic (oil-associated) methane partially overlap the isotopic compositions of microbial methane. Nevertheless, the isotopic compositions of methane provide an invaluable tool for differentiating among various processes involved in methane formation and occurrence.

Abiogenic methane is thought to form by inorganic chemical processes. Methane emanating from midocean-ridge hydrothermal systems is considered to be abiogenic and is characterized by heavy (more positive) carbon and hydrogen isotopic compositions (fig. 5). Abiogenic methane is a rather exotic form of methane (Schoell, 1988) and has not been shown to be commercially important.

Nitrogen is one of many nonhydrocarbon components of natural gas, ranging from trace amounts to concentrations approaching 100 percent (U.S. Bureau of Mines, 1983). The possible sources of nitrogen include (1) thermal degradation of organic matter in sediments, (2) maturation of coal beds, (3) diffusion from igneous and metamorphic rocks, and (4) trapped air (Hunt, 1979). The origin of nitrogen-rich natural gas is still puzzling. In a recent study of this kind of gas in the Sacramento basin of California, Jenden and others (1988) concluded that the gas is derived from metasedimentary rocks of the Franciscan complex thrust beneath the Great Valley during late Mesozoic and early Cenozoic convergence. In reaching this conclusion, they point

[1]U.S. Geological Survey, Menlo Park, Calif.

out two factors of importance to natural gas exploration. First, the use of nitrogen isotopic compositions, at least in the Sacramento basin, is not very diagnostic and does not permit a satisfactory distinction between sedimentary, low-grade metasedimentary, and igneous sources. Second, hydrocarbon-rich and nitrogen-rich gases in this basin are genetically unrelated; thus the occurrence of nitrogen should not necessarily be used to predict the presence of nearby hydrocarbon accumulations, as was previously recommended (Getz, 1977).

In summary, this discussion has demonstrated the utility of carbon and hydrogen isotopes of methane to help decipher the processes that produced the methane. This information can be useful in developing strategies for further exploration. In contrast, the nitrogen isotopic composition of nitrogen in natural gas does not appear to be particularly diagnostic, and the origin of nitrogen-rich natural gas is generally not well understood.

REFERENCES CITED

Burke, R.A., Jr., Martens, C.S., and Sackett, W.M., 1988, Seasonal variation of D/H and $^{13}C/^{12}C$ ratios of biogenic methane in surface sediments of Cape Lookout Bight, U.S.A.: Nature, v. 332, p. 829–831.

Coleman, D.D., Liu, C-L., and Riley, K.M., 1988, Microbial methane in the shallow Paleozoic sediments and glacial drift deposits of Illinois, U.S.A.: Chemical Geology, v. 71, p. 23–40.

Getz, F.A., 1977, Molecular nitrogen: Clue in coal-derived-methane hunt: Oil and Gas Journal, 25 April, p. 220–221.

Hunt, J.M., 1979, Petroleum geochemistry and geology: San Francisco, W.H. Freeman, 617 p.

Jenden, P.D., and Kaplan, I.R., 1986, Comparison of microbial gases from the Middle America Trench and Scripps Submarine Canyon: Implications for the origin of natural gas: Applied Geochemistry, v. 1, p. 631–646.

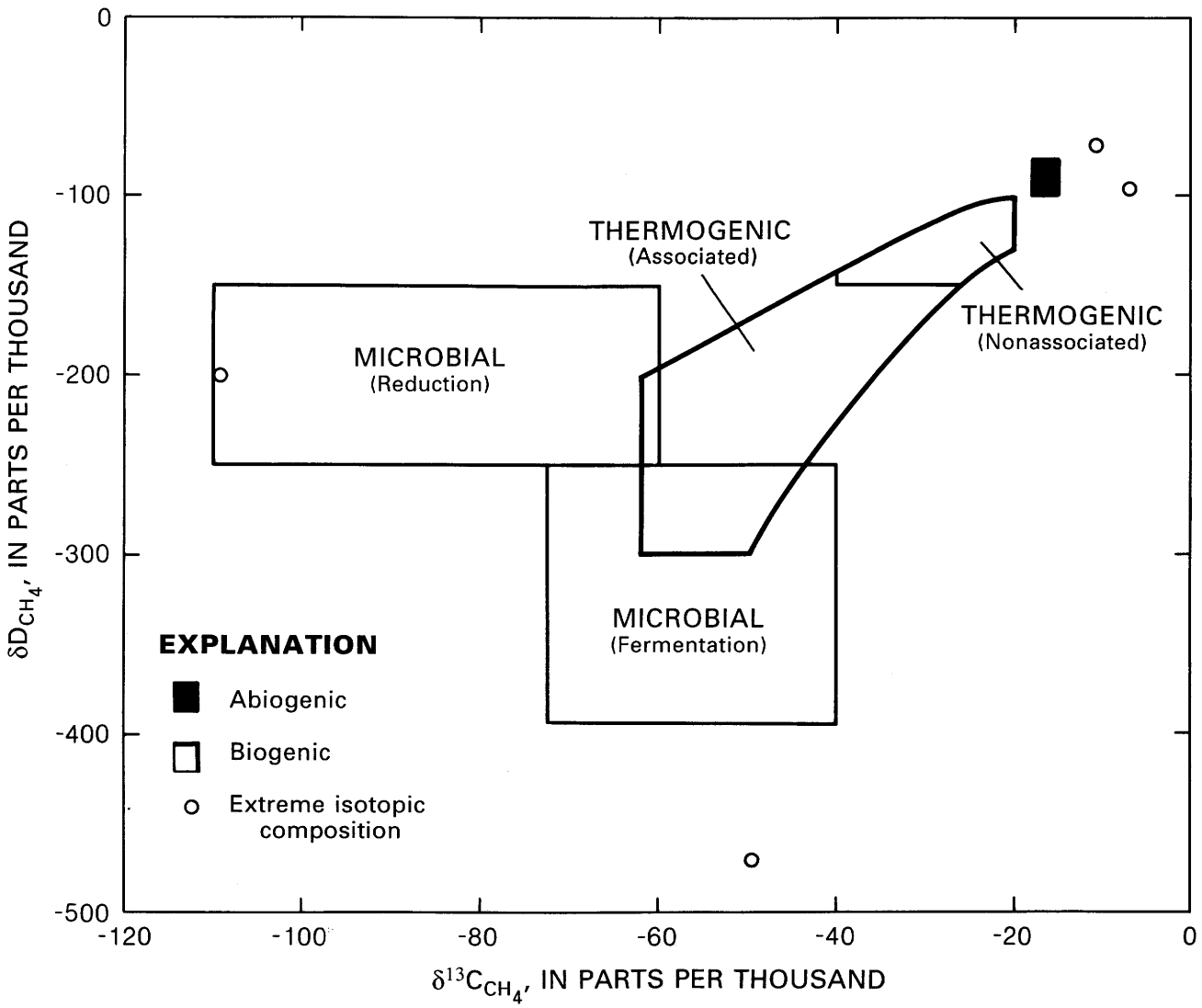


Figure 5. Carbon and hydrogen (deuterium) isotopic compositions in naturally occurring methane (modified from Schoell, 1988).

Jenden, P.D., Kaplan, I.R., Poreda, R.J., and Craig, H., 1988, Origin of nitrogen-rich natural gases in the California Great Valley: Evidence from helium, carbon and nitrogen isotope ratios: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 52, p. 851–861.

Martens, C.S., Blair, N.E., Green, C.D., and Des Marais, D.J., 1986, Seasonal variations in the stable carbon isotopic signature of biogenic methane in a coastal sediment: Science, v. 233, p. 1300–1303.

Rice, D.D., and Claypool, G.E., 1981, Generation, accumulation and resource potential of biogenic gas: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 65, p. 5–25.

Schoell, M., 1980, The hydrogen and carbon isotopic composition of methane from natural gases of various origins: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 44, p. 649–661.

———1983, Genetic characterizations of natural gases: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 67, p. 2225–2238.

———1988, Multiple origins of methane in the earth: Chemical Geology, v. 71, p. 1–10.

U.S. Bureau of Mines, 1983, Analyses of natural gases, 1917–1982 (magnetic tape): National Technical Information Service, Accession No. PB 83–210286.

Whiticar, M.J., Faber, E., and Schoell, M., 1986, Biogenic methane formation in marine and freshwater environments: CO_2 reduction vs. acetate fermentation—Isotope evidence: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 50, p. 693–709.

Natural Gas Hydrates

By Timothy S. Collett *and* Keith A. Kvenvolden[1]

Gas hydrates are crystalline substances composed of water and gas in which a solid-water lattice accommodates gas molecules in a cagelike structure. In gas hydrates, water crystallizes in the cubic crystallographic system, forming structure I or II geometries depending on the composition of the gas; structure I gas hydrate is more commonly expected in nature (Davidson and others, 1978). Molecules of gases such as methane and ethane are small enough to be included in the water lattice of a structure I gas hydrate. At standard conditions (STP), one volume of structure I methane hydrate may contain as much as 164 volumes of methane gas (Davidson and others, 1978); because of this large volumetric conversion gas hydrates may represent an important source of natural gas.

Gas hydrates occur in sedimentary deposits under conditions of pressure and temperature that are present in permafrost regions and beneath the sea in outer continental margins (reviewed by Kvenvolden and McMenamin, 1980). Geologic, geochemical, and geophysical evidence of gas hydrates in both the marine and permafrost environments include (1) high concentrations of methane in sedimentary deposits, (2) gas released from cores in the amounts expected for decomposing gas hydrate, (3) seismic anomalies that can be explained by the properties of sediments containing hydrates, and (4) geophysical well-log responses indicative of hydrate-bearing sediments.

The presence of gas hydrates in offshore continental margins has been inferred mainly from anomalous seismic reflectors that coincide with the predicted transition boundary at the base of the gas-hydrate stability zone. This reflector is commonly called a bottom-simulating reflector or BSR. BSR's have been mapped at depths below the sea floor ranging from about 100 to about 1,100 m (Kvenvolden and McMenamin, 1980). The trapped free gas associated with BSR's represents a drilling hazard, and as such they have never been knowingly drilled; thus, BSR's are not proven to be caused by hydrates. However, gas hydrate samples recovered from wells drilled near BSR's indirectly confirm that BSR's are the consequence of gas hydrates. Gas hydrates have been recovered within 6.5 m of the sea floor in sediment of the Black Sea (Yefremova and Zhizhchenko, 1975) and the Gulf of Mexico (Brooks and others, 1986). Also, gas hydrates have been recovered at greater subbottom depths during research drilling and coring off the southeastern U.S.A. (Kvenvolden and Barnard, 1983), Mexico (Shipley and Didyk, 1982), Guatemala (Harrison and Curiale, 1982; Kvenvolden and MacDonald, 1985), and Peru (Kvenvolden and Kastner, 1989).

Cold surface temperatures at high latitudes are conducive to the development of onshore permafrost and gas hydrate in the subsurface. Gas hydrates are known to be present in the western Siberian platform (Makogon and others, 1972) and are believed to occur in other permafrost areas of northern USSR, including the Timan-Pechora province, the eastern Siberian craton, and the northeastern Siberian and Kamchatka areas (Cherskiy and others, 1985). Permafrost-associated gas hydrates are also present in the North American Arctic. Well-log responses, attributed to the presence of gas hydrates, have been obtained in about a fifth of the wells drilled in the Mackenzie Delta, and in the Arctic Islands over half of the wells are inferred to contain gas hydrates (Judge, 1988). On the North Slope of Alaska gas hydrates have been identified in 34 petroleum industry wells using geophysical well-log responses calibrated to the response of an interval in one well where gas hydrates were recovered in a core by ARCO and Exxon (Collett and others, 1988). Most of the North Slope gas hydrates occur in a series of laterally continuous Upper Cretaceous and lower Tertiary sandstone and conglomerate rock units, all geographically restricted to the area overlying the eastern part of the Kuparuk River oil field and the western part of the Prudhoe Bay oil field. Preliminary resource calculations suggest that the volume of gas within these hydrates is approximately 8 to 10 trillion cubic feet. Geochemical analyses of well samples from the Prudhoe Bay-Kuparuk River area suggest that the gas hydrates consist of a mixture of microbial and thermogenic gas. It is postulated that the thermogenic gas migrated from deeper reservoirs along the same faults thought to be migration pathways for the large volumes of heavy oil that occur at shallow depths in this area. The combined information from Arctic gas-hydrate studies shows that in permafrost regions, gas hydrates may exist at subsurface depths ranging from about 130 to about 2,000 m. Gas hydrates may also be associated with permafrost in Antarctica, but few data are available (Hitchon, 1974; MacDonald, 1983); land-temperature profiles suggest that gas hydrates could exist to depths as great as 2,000 m.

[1]U.S. Geological Survey, Menlo Park, Calif.

Because large quantities of gas hydrates are widespread in permafrost regions and in offshore marine sediments, they may be a potential energy resource. Estimates of the amount of gas in hydrates of oceanic and continental settings range from 1.2×10^5 to 2.7×10^8 trillion cubic feet (adapted from Potential Gas Committee, 1981). With such a large resource potential, numerous recovery schemes have been suggested. As reviewed by Yousif and others (1988), the three most practical schemes for the production of gas from hydrates are (1) thermal stimulation, in which an external heat source is used to dissociate the hydrates, (2) depressurization, in which the production of associated free gas lowers reservoir pressures to cause decomposition of the hydrates, and (3) the use of gas hydrate inhibitors, in which a substance such as methanol is used to disequilibrate the hydrate. The Soviets have used the depressurization scheme to demonstrate that hydrates are an immediate, producible source of natural gas; their Messoyakha gas field in the West Siberian basin produced about 70 billion cubic feet of gas from hydrates over an eight-year period (Y.F. Makogon, Ministry of Gas Industry, Moscow, written communication).

Recent drilling and geologic sampling on the North Slope of Alaska have revealed the presence of a gas hydrate/free gas contact at the predicted base of the methane-hydrate stability zone, and a similar contact has been noted at the Russian Messoyakha hydrate gas accumulation. Future work on the North Slope will focus on the relation between the gas hydrate and associated free-gas accumulations. An assessment will be made of the production characteristics and economic potential of both the hydrates and related free-gas occurrences.

REFERENCES CITED

Brooks, J.M., Cox, H.B., Bryant, W.R., Kennicutt, M.C., Mann, R.G., and McDonald, T.J., 1986, Association of gas hydrates and oil seepage in the Gulf of Mexico, *in* Advances in organic geochemistry 1985: Organic Geochemistry, v. 10, p. 221–234.

Cherskiy, N.V., Tsarev, V.P., and Nikitin, S.P., 1985, Investigation and prediction of conditions of accumulation of gas resources in gas-hydrate pools: Petroleum Geology, v. 21, p. 65–89.

Collett, T.S., Bird, K.J., Kvenvolden, K.A., and Magoon, L.B., 1988, Geologic interrelations relative to gas hydrates within the North Slope of Alaska: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–389, 150 p.

Davidson, D.W., El-Defrawy, M.K., Fuglem, M.O., and Judge, A.S., 1978, Natural gas hydrates in northern Canada: Proceedings of the 3d International Conference on Permafrost, National Research Council of Canada, v. 1, p. 938–943.

Harrison, W.E., and Curiale, J.A., 1982, Gas hydrates in sediments of Holes 497 and 498A, Deep Sea Drilling Project Leg 67, *in* Aubouin, J., von Huene, R., and others, eds., Initial Report of the Deep Sea Drilling Project, v. 67: Washington, D.C., U.S. Government Printing Office, p. 591–594.

Hitchon, B., 1974, Occurrence of natural gas hydrates in sedimentary basins, *in* Kaplan, I.R., ed., Natural gases in marine sediments: New York, Plenum, p. 195–225.

Judge, A.S., 1988, Mapping the distribution and properties of natural gas hydrates in Canada: Proceedings of the American Chemical Society Third Chemical Congress of the North American Continent, June 6–7, Toronto, Abstract 29.

Kvenvolden, K.A., and Barnard, L.A., 1983, Gas hydrates of the Blake Outer Ridge, Site 533, Deep Sea Drilling Project Leg 76, *in* Sheridan, R.E., Gradstein, F., and others, eds., Initial Reports of the Deep Sea Drilling Project, v. 76: Washington, D.C., U.S. Government Printing Office, p. 353–365.

Kvenvolden, K.A., and Kastner, M., 1989, Gas hydrates of the Peruvian continental margin, *in* Suess, E., von Huene, R., Emeis, K.C., and others, eds., Initial Reports of the Ocean Drilling Program, v. 112 (Part B): Washington, D.C., U.S. Government Printing Office, p. (in press).

Kvenvolden, K.A., and MacDonald, T.J., 1985, Gas hydrates of the Middle America Trench, Deep Sea Drilling Project Leg 84, *in* von Huene, R., Aubouin, J., and others, eds., Initial Reports of the Deep Sea Drilling Project, v. 84: Washington, D.C., U.S. Government Printing Office, p. 667–682.

Kvenvolden, K.A., and McMenamin, M.A., 1980, Hydrates of natural gas: A review of their geologic occurrences: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 825, 11 p.

MacDonald, G.J., 1983, The many origins of natural gas: Journal of Petroleum Geology, v. 5, p. 341–362.

Makogon, Y.F., Trebin, F.A., Trofimuk, A.A., Tsarev, V.P., and Cherskiy, N.V., 1972, Detection of a pool of natural gas in a solid (hydrate gas) state: Doklady Academy of Sciences U.S.S.R., Earth Science Section, v. 196, p. 197–200.

Potential Gas Committee, 1981, Potential supply of natural gas in the United States (as of December 31, 1980): Golden, Potential Gas Agency, Colorado School of Mines, 119 p.

Shipley, T.H., and Didyk, B.M., 1982, Occurrence of methane hydrates offshore southern Mexico, *in* Watkins, J.S., Moore, J.C., and others, eds., Initial Reports of the Deep Sea Drilling Project, v. 66: Washington, D.C., U.S. Government Printing Office, p. 547–555.

Yefremova, A.G., and Zhizhchenko, B.P., 1975, Occurrence of crystal hydrates of gas in sediments of modern marine basins: Doklady Academy of Sciences U.S.S.R., Earth Science Section, v. 214, p. 219–220.

Yousif, M.H., Abass, H.H., Selim, M.S., and Sloan, E.D., 1988, Experimental and theoretical investigation of methane gas hydrate dissociation in porous media: Proceedings of the 63d Annual Technical Conference and Exhibition of the Society of Petroleum Engineers, October 2–5, Houston, Texas, p. 571–583.

Quantitative Petroleum Resource Assessment Methodologies

By Robert A. Crovelli[1]

INTRODUCTION

The geologic appraisal model that is selected for doing a petroleum resource assessment depends upon the purpose of the assessment, the basic geologic assumptions of the area, the type of available data, the time to deadlines, the human and financial resources, the available computer facilities, and, most important, the existing quantitative methodology with corresponding computer software and any new quantitative methodology that would have to be developed. Therefore, different resource assessment projects usually require different geologic models. Also, more than one geologic model might be needed in a single project for assessing different regions of the study area or for crosschecking the resource estimates of the study area. Some geologic analyses used in the past for petroleum resource appraisal involved play analysis. The corresponding quantitative methodologies of these analyses usually consisted of Monte Carlo simulation techniques.

The U.S. Geological Survey's petroleum resource appraisal studies have resulted in a wide variety of analyses, geologic models, quantitative methods, and computer programs. The type of analysis refers to the basic geologic assessment unit; for example, province, basin, or play. The geologic model consists of the geologic assumptions and mathematical description of the assessment approach; for example, reservoir engineering, volumetric yield, field size, or direct assessment. The quantitative method is the type of probabilistic methodology that is mathematically derived from the geologic model; for example, Monte Carlo simulation or analytic probability theory. The computer software is written on the basis of the probabilistic methodology.

PAST METHODOLOGIES

Some past petroleum resource appraisal studies by the U.S. Geological Survey are as follows.

1. The United States study (Miller and others, 1975) assessed the petroleum provinces in the United States using a direct-assessment model, a volumetric-yield submodel, and a Monte Carlo method for estimates of aggregations with the computer program called MIT: Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

2. The National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska (NPRA) study (U.S. Department of the Interior, 1979; White, 1981) assessed geologic plays in the North Slope of Alaska using a reservoir-engineering model and a Monte Carlo method with the computer program RASP: Resource Appraisal Simulation for Petroleum.

3. The Arctic National Wildlife Refuge (ANWR), which was formerly called the William O. Douglas Arctic Wildlife Range (Mast and others, 1980), was assessed in a similar manner as the NPRA study.

4. The United States study (Dolton and others, 1981; Crovelli, 1981, 1984a) was conducted in a similar manner as the 1975 United States assessment; however, an analytic probabilistic methodology was developed for individual province estimates and resulted in the computer package NASP: National Appraisal System for Petroleum.

5. The Devonian shale study (Charpentier and others, 1982) was an assessment of unconventional natural-gas resources in the Devonian shale of the Appalachian basin; play analysis was applied using a reservoir- engineering model and a Monte Carlo method with the computer program MRASP, a modified version of RASP.

6. The world oil study (Masters and others, 1983; Crovelli, 1984b, 1985a) assessed the oil basins in the world using basically the same approach as the 1981 United States assessment; however, an analytic probabilistic methodology was also developed for aggregating the basin estimates and resulted in the computer package WASP: World Appraisal System for Petroleum.

7. The Wilderness Lands in the Western United States study (Crovelli, 1983, 1984c, 1985b, 1986; Crovelli and Balay, 1984) assessed geologic clusters using a direct-assessment model, a richness-factor submodel, and an analytic probabilistic methodology for individual cluster estimates and aggregations with the computer package WLASP: Wilderness Lands Appraisal System for Petroleum.

8. The world oil and gas study (Masters and others, 1987) assessed the oil and gas basins in the world using basically the same approach as the 1983 world assessment; however, a completely analytic probabilistic methodology was developed and resulted in the revised computer package RWASP: Revised World Appraisal System for Petroleum.

[1]U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.

PRESENT METHODOLOGIES

During recent years, the U.S. Geological Survey has made major strides to design and develop petroleum resource appraisal studies involving play analysis and analytic probabilistic methodology with a variety of geologic models. Play analysis is a general approach using various geologic models and probabilistic methods for analyzing a geologic play. In applying play analysis, a petroleum assessment area is first partitioned into geologic plays, and then the individual plays are analyzed. The individual play estimates of oil and gas are aggregated, respectively, in order to estimate the petroleum potential of the entire assessment area.

A probabilistic system of petroleum resource appraisal for play analysis has been designed to meet the following requirements: (1) includes a variety of geologic models, (2) uses an analytic methodology instead of Monte Carlo simulation, (3) possesses the capacity to aggregate estimates from many areas that have been assessed by different geologic models, and (4) runs quickly on a microcomputer. The geologic models for play analysis consist of four basic types: reservoir engineering, volumetric yield, field size, and direct assessment. The order in which the models are listed reflects the decreasing amount of geologic information that is required in the model.

The reservoir-engineering model is the most data-intensive model and was used in the three recent petroleum resource appraisal studies by the USGS given below. These three assessments are followed by studies using less data-intensive models.

1987 Arctic National Wildlife Refuge Assessment

The Arctic National Wildlife Refuge (ANWR) study (Crovelli and Balay, 1986; Crovelli, 1987a, 1987b, 1988; Dolton and others, 1987) assessed in-place oil and gas resources of geologic plays in the North Slope of Alaska using a reservoir-engineering model. The model is similar to the reservoir-engineering model in the 1980 ANWR assessment except that some of the parameter values in the reservoir-engineering equations were changed.

An analytic probabilistic methodology using probability theory was developed for play analysis in the 1987 ANWR study based upon the reservoir-engineering model. A computer software package consisting of six computer programs was created and called Fast Appraisal System for Petroleum, Reservoir Engineering (FASPRE). Some of the details of the analytic method and the computer package FASPRE were presented by Crovelli and Balay (1986).

Hungary Assessment

The Hungary assessment of the Békés basin involved generalizing the reservoir-engineering model and the aggregation model that were used in the 1987 ANWR study (Crovelli and Balay, in press). The modifications included the requirements that the system produce output in metric units and run on an IBM-PC-XT compatible computer. A user's manual was also written that included guides for installation and operation of the system.

The purpose of modifying the existing reservoir-engineering model was to make the geologic model universal and, therefore, applicable anywhere in the world. This was necessary since the model in the 1987 ANWR study was site-specific, being only applicable in the North Slope of Alaska.

The analytic probabilistic methodology was derived from the methodology for the 1987 ANWR study by replacing the site-specific reservoir-engineering equations with a new general system of equations and parameters. Therefore, through extensive modification of the FASPRE package, the universal metric version of the play analysis computer software package was built and called FASPUM. The FASPUM software is available to the general public through the Open-File services of the USGS (Crovelli and Balay, 1987).

Tight Gas Sands Assessment

The Tight Gas Sands study (Johnson and others, 1987) is an assessment of low-permeability gas resources of the Upper Cretaceous Mesaverde Group in the Piceance basin of western Colorado. The resource appraisal system used in this study was derived from the generalized system of the universal metric study and the 1987 ANWR study. Modifications were made that included conversion to U.S. Customary units. The computer software package FASPUE is essentially the U.S. version of the metric version FASPUM. Therefore, FASPUE is a universal U.S.-units, play-analysis system using a reservoir-engineering model and an analytic probabilistic methodology. The FASPUE software is available to the general public (Crovelli and Balay, 1988, 1989).

The ANWR study was designed to assess conventional oil and gas accumulations which are treated as a set of prospects in a play area. However, the Tight Gas Sands study is an assessment of unconventional low-permeability gas reservoirs. Therefore, an entire play area is treated as a single gas accumulation. The hydrocarbon reservoir parameters are also assigned accordingly. The mathematical formulation of the geologic model is appropriate for conventional and unconventional petroleum resources. The different applications require different physical interpretations of the geologic model.

Federal Offshore Assessments

The Minerals Management Service (MMS), an agency of the U.S. Department of the Interior, made a systematic assessment of the undiscovered economically recoverable oil and gas resources for Federal offshore areas (Cooke, 1985). The MMS study of Federal offshore areas applied a prospect analysis using a volumetric-yield model and a Monte Carlo method with the computer program PRESTO.

The Bureau of Land Management (BLM), an agency of the U.S. Department of the Interior, made the assessment of the undiscovered economically recoverable oil and gas resources for the 1987 ANWR study. The BLM assessment utilized the PRESTO program. The USGS was responsible for making the in-place assessment, while the BLM was responsible for the recoverable assessment in the 1987 ANWR study.

The volumetric-yield model is not as data-intensive as the reservoir-engineering model; that is, not as many hydrocarbon-volume attributes are involved. Some of the hydrocarbon-volume attributes in the reservoir engineering equations are combined into a single factor, called the oil yield factor in the oil volume equation and the gas yield factor in the gas volume equation. Estimates of oil and gas yield factors as distributions indicate the amount of hydrocarbons expected per volume of reservoir rock (acre-foot).

National Assessment

The USGS recently completed its first petroleum resource appraisal of the entire United States using play analysis (Mast and others, 1989). The major geologic model in the play analysis is the field-size model. A probability model incorporating the field-size distributions of oil and gas was designed with a risk structure that is quite different from FASPRE and FASPUE.

An analytic probabilistic methodology was developed for play analysis in the United States study based upon the field-size model and the new risk structure. A computer software package consisting of 11 computer programs was written and called Fast Appraisal System for Petroleum, Field Size (FASPF).

The field-size model is based upon an assessment of the size of the fields in the play and not the individual geologic hydrocarbon-volume attributes. The volumes of oil and gas accumulations are modeled as statistical distributions in the form of histograms or probability distributions. Field-size distributions are used two ways: (1) the distribution is of known fields from an explored area, and the distribution is used to estimate the resources of the remaining fields in that area, and (2) the distribution is used as an analog in geologically similar unexplored areas (Houghton, 1988).

A summary of the past and present petroleum resource appraisal studies by the USGS discussed in this paper is presented in table 5.

REFERENCES CITED

Charpentier, R.R., de Witt, W., Jr., Claypool, G.E., Harris, L.D., Mast, R.F., Megeath, J.D., Roen, J.B., and Schmoker, J.W., 1982, Estimates of unconventional natural-gas resources of the Devonian shale of the Appalachian Basin: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 82–474, 43 p.

Cooke, L.W., 1985, Estimates of undiscovered, economically recoverable oil and gas resources for the Outer Continental Shelf as of July 1984: U.S. Department of the Interior, Minerals Management Service Offshore Resource Evaluation Division, OCS Report, MMS 85–0012, 45 p.

Crovelli, R.A., 1981, Probabilistic methodology for oil and gas resource appraisal: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 81–1151, 77 p.

———1983, Probabilistic methodology for petroleum resource appraisal of wilderness lands, Chapter O, *in* Miller, B.M., ed., Petroleum potential of wilderness lands in the western United States: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 902-A-P, p. O1–O5.

———1984a, U.S. Geological Survey probabilistic methodology for oil and gas resource appraisal of the United States: Journal of the International Association for Mathematical Geology, v. 16, no. 8, p. 797–808.

———1984b, Procedures for petroleum resource assessment used by the U.S. Geological Survey—Statistical and probabilistic methodology, *in* Masters, C.D., ed., Petroleum resource assessment: International Union of Geological Sciences Publication 17, p. 24–38.

———1984c, Petroleum potential of designated versus proposed Wilderness Lands in the western United States: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 84–363, 55 p.

———1985a, Comparative study of aggregations under different dependency assumptions for assessment of undiscovered recoverable oil resources in the world: Journal of the International Association for Mathematical Geology, v. 17, no. 4, p. 367–374.

———1985b, Petroleum potential of Wilderness Lands in the western United States by province: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 85–294, 70 p.

———1986, U.S. Geological Survey quantitative petroleum resource appraisal methodologies, *in* Rice, D.D., ed., Oil and gas assessment—Methods and applications: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Studies in Geology 21, p. 69–76.

———1987a, Probability theory versus simulation of petroleum potential in play analysis, *in* Albin, S.L., and Harris, C.M., eds., Statistical and computational issues in probability modeling, Part 1: Annals of Operations Research, v. 8, p. 363–381.

———1987b, Contributor to: Assessment of oil and gas potential and petroleum geology of the 1002 area, *in* Arctic National Wildlife Refuge, Alaska, coastal plain resource assessment—Report and recommendation to the Con-

Table 5. Summary of some past and present petroleum resource assessments by the US. Geological Survey

Assessment	Year	Analysis	Model	Method	Software
United States	1975	Province	Direct assessment (volumetric yield)	Monte Carlo	MIT
NPRA[1]	1979	Play	Reservoir engineering	Monte Carlo	RASP
ANWR[2]	1980	Play	Reservoir engineering	Monte Carlo	RASP
United States	1981	Province	Direct assessment (volumetric yield)	Monte Carlo & Analytic	NASP
Devonian Shale[3]	1982	Play	Reservoir engineering	Monte Carlo	MRASP
World	1983	Basin	Direct assessment (volumetric yield)	Monte Carlo & Analytic	WASP
Wilderness Lands	1983	Cluster	Direct assessment (richness factor)	Analytic	WLASP
World	1987	Basin	Direct assessment (volumetric yield)	Analytic	RWASP
ANWR	1987	Play	Reservoir engineering	Analytic	FASPRE
Hungary	1987	Play	Reservoir engineering	Analytic	FASPUM
Tight gas sands	1987	Play	Reservoir engineering	Analytic	FASPUE
United States	1988	Play	Field size	Analytic	FASPF

[1]National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska.

[2]Arctic National Wildlife Refuge in Alaska.

[3]Devonian Shale of Appalachian basin.

gress of the United States and final legislative environmental impact statement: Washington, D.C., U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, U.S. Geological Survey, and Bureau of Land Management, p. 55–82.

———1988, U.S. Geological Survey assessment methodology for estimation of undiscovered petroleum resources in play analysis of the Arctic National Wildlife Refuge, *in* Chung, C.F., Fabbri, A.G., and Sinding-Larsen, R., eds., Quantitative analysis of mineral and energy resources: NATO ASI Series C: Mathematical and Physical Sciences, v. 223, p. 145–160.

Crovelli, R.A., and Balay, R.H., 1984, Computer program directory for petroleum assessment of wilderness lands in the western United States: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 84–275, 14 p.

———1986, FASP, An analytic resource appraisal program for petroleum play analysis: Computers and Geosciences, v. 12, no. 4B, p. 423–475.

———1987, FASPUM metric version: Analytic petroleum resource appraisal microcomputer programs for play analysis using a reservoir-engineering model: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 87–414A, 14 p. [U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 87–414B, 5.25" diskette.]

———1988, A microcomputer program for oil and gas resource assessment: COGS Computer Contributions, v. 4, no. 3, p. 108–122.

———1989, FASPUE English version—Analytic petroleum resource appraisal microcomputer programs for play analysis using a reservoir-engineering model: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 89–1A, 15 p. [U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 89–1B, 5.25" diskette.]

———in press, Geologic model, probabilistic methodology and computer programs for petroleum assessment, Chapter 28 *in* Teleki, P.G., and Kokai, J., eds., Basin analysis—A case history from Hungary: Dordrecht, Neth., Reidel.

Dolton, G.L., Bird, K.J., and Crovelli, R.A., 1987, Assessment of in-place oil and gas resources, chapter 22, *in* Bird, K.J., and Magoon, L.B., eds., Petroleum geology of the northern part of the Arctic National Wildlife Refuge, northeastern Alaska: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1778, p. 277–298.

Dolton, G.L., Carlson, K.H., Charpentier, R.R., Coury, A.B., Crovelli, R.A., Frezon, S.E., Khan, A.S., Lister, J.H., McMullin, R.H., Pike, R.S., Powers, R.B., Scott, E.W., and Varnes, K.L., 1981, Estimates of undiscovered recoverable conventional resources of oil and gas in the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 860, 87 p.

Houghton, J.C., 1988, Use of the truncated shifted Pareto distribution in assessing size distribution of oil and gas fields: Mathematical Geology, v. 20, no. 8, p. 907–938.

Johnson, R.C., Crovelli, R.A., Spencer, C.W., and Mast, R.F., 1987, An assessment of gas resources in low-permeability sandstones of the Upper Cretaceous Mesaverde Group, Piceance basin, Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 87–357, 165 p.

Mast, R.F., Dolton, G.L., Crovelli, R.A., Root, D.H., Attanasi, E.D., Martin, P.E., Cooke, L.W., Carpenter, G.B., Pecora, W.C., and Rose, M.B., 1989, Estimates of undiscovered conventional oil and gas resources in the United States—A part of the Nation's energy endowment: U.S. Geological Survey and Minerals Management Service, 44 p.

Mast, R.F., McMullin, R.H., Bird, K.J., and Brosgé, W.P., 1980, Resource appraisal of undiscovered oil and gas resources in the William O. Douglas Arctic Wildlife Range: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 80–916, 62 p.

Masters, C.D., Attanasi, E.D., Dietzman, W.D., Meyer, R.F., Mitchell, R.W., and Root, D.H., 1987, World resources of crude oil, natural gas, natural bitumen, and shale oil: Twelfth World Petroleum Congress, Houston, Texas, 1987, Preprints, Topic 25, p. 1–25.

Masters, C.D., Root, D.H., and Dietzman, W.D., 1983, Distribution and quantitative assessment of world crude-oil reserves and resources: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 83–728, 11 p.

Miller, B.M., Thomsen, H.L., Dolton, G.L., Coury, A.B., Hendricks, T.A., Lennartz, F.E., Powers, R.B., Sable, E.G., and Varnes, K.L., 1975, Geological estimates of undis-

covered recoverable oil and gas resources in the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 725, 78 p.

U.S. Department of the Interior, Office of Minerals Policy and Research Analysis, 1979, Final report of the 105(b) economic and policy analysis, alternative overall procedures for the exploration, development, production, transportation and distribution of the petroleum resources of the National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska (NPRA), 145 p.

White, L.P., 1981, A play approach to hydrocarbon resource assessment and evaluation, *in* Ramsay, J.B., The economics of exploration for energy resources: Greenwich, Connecticut, JAI Press, v. 26, p. 51–67 (Energy Exploration Conference, May 1979, New York).

Branch of Petroleum Geology—1988 Bibliography

Agena, W.F., Lee, M.W., Hutchinson, D.R., Behrendt, J.C., Cannon, W.F., and Green, A.G., 1988, 1986 GLIMPCE seismic reflection survey stacked data: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–386, 7 p.

Anders, D.E., 1988, Geochemical correlation in petroleum systems, *in* Magoon, L.B., ed., Petroleum systems of the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1870, p. 60–64.

Balch, A.H., ed., 1988, A seismic-stratigraphic investigation of the Madison and associated aquifers—Application to ground-water exploration, Powder River basin, Montana-Wyoming: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1330, 99 p.

———1988, Introduction, *in* Balch, A.H. ed., A seismic-stratigraphic investigation of the Madison and associated aquifers—Application to ground-water exploration, Powder River basin, Montana-Wyoming: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1330, p. 1–4.

———1988, Description of the vertical seismic profiling method, *in* Balch, A.H., ed., A seismic-stratigraphic investigation of the Madison and associated aquifers—Application to ground-water exploration, Powder River basin, Montana-Wyoming: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1330, p. 21–30.

Balch, A.H., Lee, M.W., and Ryder, R.T., 1988, Acquisition, processing, and interpretation of vertical seismic profiles, *in* Balch, A.H., ed., A seismic-stratigraphic investigation of the Madison and associated aquifers—Application to ground-water exploration, Powder River basin, Montana-Wyoming: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1330, p. 55–86.

———1988, Interpretations and conclusions, *in* Balch, A.H., ed., A seismic-stratigraphic investigation of the Madison and associated aquifers—Application to ground-water exploration, Powder River basin, Montana-Wyoming: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1330, p. 87–96.

Ball, M.M., 1988, Midcontinent, Chapter IV-I, Region 7, *in* U.S. Geological Survey and Minerals Management Service National assessment of undiscovered conventional oil and gas resources—Working paper: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–373, p. 277–284.

Ball, M.M., Dolton, G.L., and Robinson, Keith, 1988, West Texas and southeastern New Mexico, Chapter IV-G, Region 5, *in* U.S. Geological Survey and Minerals Management Service, National assessment of undiscovered conventional oil and gas resources—Working paper: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–373, p. 253–258.

Ball, M.M., Martin, R.G., Foote, R.Q., Leinbach, J., and Applegate, A.V., 1988, Structure and stratigraphy of the western Florida shelf; Part I, Multichannel seismic reflection data: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–439, p. 1–29.

Barker, C.E., 1988, Fluid inclusions in the Pleistocene Miami Limestone, southeastern Florida—Contradictory evidence of vadose diagenesis: Geological Society of America Abstracts with Programs, v. 20, no. 7, p. 119.

———1988, Geothermics of petroleum systems—Implications of the stabilization of kerogen thermal maturation after a geologically brief heating duration at peak temperature, *in* Magoon, L.B., ed., Petroleum systems of the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1870, p. 26–29.

Barker, C.E., and Coury, A.B., compilers, 1988, Abstracts of the U.S. Geological Survey, central region, 1988 Poster Review: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–643, 33 p.

Barker, C.E., and Halley, R.B., 1988, Fluid inclusions with unusually consistent vapor to liquid ratios in vadose cement, Pleistocene Miami Limestone, southeastern Florida: Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, v. 52, no. 5, p. 1019–1025.

Barker, C.E., and Pawlewicz, M.J., 1988, Tertiary reheating and renewed petroleum generation in the western Delaware basin, Texas [abs.]: Geological Society of America Abstracts with Programs, v. 20, no. 7, p. 228.

———1988, Tertiary igneous intrusions and renewed petroleum generation in the western Delaware basin, Texas, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 1.

Bayliss, G.S., and Magoon, L.B., 1988, Organic facies and thermal maturity of sedimentary rocks in the National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska, *in* Gryc, George, ed., Geology and exploration of the National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska, 1974 to 1982: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1399, p. 489–518.

Behrendt, J.C., Green, A.G., Cannon, W.F., Hutchinson, D.R., Lee, M.W., Milkereit, B., Agena, W.F., and Spencer, C., 1988, Crustal structure of the midcontinent rift system—Results from GLIMPCE deep seismic reflection profiles: Geology, v. 16, no. 1, p. 81–85.

———1988, Crustal structure and deep rift basins of the Midcontinent rift system—Results from GLIMPCE deep seismic-reflection profiles, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS Research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Circular 1025, p. 3–4.

Behrendt, J.C., Hutchinson, D.R., Trehu, A., Cannon, W.F., Lee, M.W., Thornber, C.R., Green, A.G., Milkereit, B., and Spencer, C., 1988, Seismic reflection (GLIMPCE) evidence of deep crustal intrusions and magmatic underplating associated with the midcontinent rift system of North America [abs.]: International Workshop and Symposium on Seismic Probing of Continents and their Margins, Canberra, Australia, July 1–8, 1988, unpaged.

Bird, K.J., 1988, Fossil fuel and mineral resources of northern

Alaska: American Association for the Advancement of Science Annual Meeting, January 1989, Abstracts of Papers, AAAS Publication 88–30, p. 28.

———1988, Alaskan North Slope stratigraphic nomenclature and data summary for government-drilled wells, *in* Gryc, George, ed., Geology and exploration of the National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska, 1974 to 1982: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1399, p. 317–354.

———1988, Structure and isopach maps of the National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska, *in* Gryc, George, ed., Geology and exploration of the National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska, 1974 to 1982: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1399, p. 355–380.

———1988, The geologic basis for the appraisal of undiscovered hydrocarbon resources in the National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska by the play appraisal method, *in* Gryc, George, ed., Geology and exploration of the National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska, 1974 to 1982: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1399, p. 81–116.

Bird, K.J., and Magoon, L.B., 1988, Chapter IV, Region 1, Alaska, *in* U.S. Geological Survey and Minerals Management Service, National assessment of undiscovered conventional oil and gas resources—Working paper: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–373, p. 212–220.

———1988, Chapter IV, Region 2, Washington, Oregon, and California, *in* U.S. Geological Survey and Minerals Management Service, National assessment of undiscovered conventional oil and gas resources—Working paper: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–373, p. 221–231.

Bird, K.J., Magoon, L.B., and Molenaar, C.M., 1988, Petroleum geology of the northern part of the Arctic National Wildlife Refuge, northeastern Alaska, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 4. [Also, American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 72, no. 2, p. 162–163.]

Bird, K.J., and Powers, R.B., 1988, Comparison of six hydrocarbon resource assessments of the National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska, *in* Gryc, George, ed., Geology and exploration of the National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska, 1974 to 1982: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1399, p. 77–80.

Butler, W.C., 1988, The rationale for assessment of undiscovered, economically recoverable petroleum in central and northern Arizona—Play analyses of seven favorable areas: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 87–450-V, 145 p.

Charpentier, R.R., 1988, Review of "Guide to the Petroleum Reference Literature" by Barbara C. Pearson and Katherine B. Ellwood: Geology, v. 16, no. 1, p. 95.

———1988, A summary of petroleum plays and characteristics of the Michigan basin: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 87–450-R, 36 p.

Charpentier, R.R., and Doveton, J.H., 1988, Regional stratigraphy and facies of the Middle Ordovician Simpson Group, southwest Kansas [abs.]: Geological Society of America Abstracts with Program, v. 20, no. 2, p. 94. [Also, Oklahoma Geology Notes, v. 48, no. 4, p. 191–192.]

Clarke, J.W., 1988, Petroleum geology of the Amu-Dar'ya gas-oil province of Soviet Central Asia: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–272, 59 p.

Claypool, G.E., and Magoon, L.B., 1988, Oil and gas source rocks in the National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska, *in* Gryc, George, ed., Geology and exploration of the National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska, 1974 to 1982: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1399, p. 451–482.

Clayton, J.L., 1988, Role of amount and type of organic matter in recognition of petroleum source rocks, *in* Magoon, L.B., ed., Petroleum systems of the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1870, p. 54–56.

Clayton, J.L., 1988, Classification and composition of crude oil, *in* Magoon, L.B., ed., Petroleum systems of the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1870, p. 54–56.

Clayton, J.L., King, J.D., Lubeck, C.M., Leventhal, J., and Daws, T.A., 1988, Paleoenvironmental and source rock assessment of black shales of Pennsylvanian age, Powder River and northern Denver basins, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 9. [Also, American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 72, no. 7, p. 867.]

Collett, T.S., 1988, Internal characteristics of ice-bearing permafrost on the North Slope of Alaska [abs.]: Eos, Transactions American Geophysical Union, v. 69, no. 44, p. 1210.

Collett, T.S., and Bird, K.J., 1988, Freezing-point depression at the base of ice-bearing permafrost on the North Slope of Alaska: Proceedings Fifth International Conference on Permafrost, Trondheim, Norway, August 2–5, 1988, p. 50–55.

———1988, Hydrocarbon distribution in the Cretaceous-Tertiary Sagavanirktok Formation, North Slope, Alaska, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 9–10.

Collett, T.S., Bird, K.J., Kvenvolden, K.A., and Magoon, L.B., 1988, Geologic interrelations relative to gas hydrates within the North Slope of Alaska: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–389, 150 p.

Collett, T.S., and Kvenvolden, K.A., 1988, Natural gas hydrate, *in* Magoon, L.B., ed., Petroleum systems of the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1870, p. 46–47.

Crovelli, R.A., 1988, Petroleum play potential—Probabilistic paradigms [abs.]: Colorado-Wyoming Chapter, American Statistical Association, 7th Annual Spring Conference on Statistics, Boulder, Colo., April 22, 1988, p. 16.

———1988, U.S. Geological Survey assessment methodology for estimation of undiscovered petroleum resources in play analysis of the Arctic National Wildlife Refuge, *in* Chung, C.F., Fabbri, A.G., and Sinding-Larsen, R., eds., Quantitative analysis of mineral and energy resources: NATO ASI Series C: Mathematical and Physical Sciences, v. 223, p. 145–160.

———1988, Multi-model approach to petroleum resource appraisal using analytic methodologies for probabilistic

systems: Mathematical Geology, v. 20, no. 8, p. 955–972.
———1988, Applied probability theory of petroleum play analysis [abs.]: The Institute of Mathematical Statistics, Symposium on Probability and its Applications, Fort Collins, Colo., August 16–19, 1988, Bulletin, v. 17, no. 3, p. 259.
———1988, A geostochastic system for petroleum resource assessment [abs.]: Operations Research Society of America and Institute of Management Sciences, 1988 Joint National Meeting, Denver, Colo., October 24–26, ORSA/TIMS Bulletin, no. 26, p. 118.
Crovelli, R.A., and Balay, R.H., 1988, A microcomputer program for oil and gas resource assessment: COGS Computer Contributions, v. 4, no. 3, p. 108–122.
———1988, A microcomputer application in oil and gas resource appraisal, *in* Peters, D.C., and Krajewski, S.A., eds., GeoTech '88 geocomputing tools—PC's workstations, and more: Colorado Section, American Institute of Professional Geologists, p. 31–36.
Crovelli, R.A., Mast, R.F., Dolton, G.L., and Balay, R.H., 1988, Assessment methodology for estimation of undiscovered petroleum resources in play analysis of the United States and aggregation methods, Chapter II.D., *in* U.S. Geological Survey and Minerals Management Service, National assessment of undiscovered conventional oil and gas resources—Working paper: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–373, p. 30–48.
Crysdale, B.L., and Barker, C.E., 1988, Fluid inclusion and other evidence for the timing of fluid migration in the Niobrara Formation, Berthoud State-4 well, Berthoud oil field, Denver, Colorado: Geological Society of America Abstracts with Programs, v. 20, no. 7, p. 228.
Crysdale, B.L., and Schenk, C.J., 1988, Bitumen-bearing deposits of the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1784, 45 p., 2 pl.
———1988, Heavy oils, *in* National energy resource issues—Geologic perspective and the role of geologic information: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1850, p. 54.
———1988, Tar sands, *in* National energy resource issues—Geologic perspective and the role of geologic information: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1850, p. 55.
Cunningham, K.I., and Roberts, A.A., 1988, Helium and C_1-C_3 hydrocarbon concentrations in permafrost ice, Marsh Creek area, Arctic National Wildlife Refuge, Alaska: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–1, 35 p.
Dean, W.E., Bostick, N.H., Bartel, A.J., Brandt, E.L., Daws, T.A., Doughten, M., Gent, C.A., Jaunarajs, S.R., Libby, B., Malcolm, M.J., Robb, E.C., Taggart, J.E., Threlkeld, C.N., Vuletich, A.K., Cunningham, C.G., Ashley, R.P., and Chou, I-Ming, 1988, Data on the geochemistry and thermal maturation of sedimentary-rock hosted, disseminated gold deposits and associated rocks, southwestern Guizhou Province, People's Republic of China: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–271, 22 p.
Desborough, G.A., Poole, F.G., Harris, A.G., and Daws, T.A., 1988, Thermal history and organic maturation of Paleozoic rocks, Pocatello area, southeastern Idaho: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–289, 8 p.
Dillon, W.P., Trehu, A.M., Valentine, P.C., and Ball, M.M., 1988, Eroded carbonate platform margin—The Blake Escarpment off southeastern United States, *in* Bally, A.W., ed., Atlas of seismic stratigraphy: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Studies in Geology 27, p. 140–143.
Dolton, G.L., and Finn, T.M., 1988, Petroleum geology of the Nemaha uplift central midcontinent: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–450-D, 41 p.
Donovan, T.J., Hendricks, J.D., Roberts, A.A., and Eliason, P.T., 1988, Low-level aeromagnetic surveying for petroleum in Arctic Alaska, *in* Gryc, George, ed., Geology and exploration of the National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska, 1974 to 1982: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1399, p. 623–632.
Dyman, T.S., Krystinik, K.B., and Takahashi, K.I., 1988, Quantitative petrographic analysis of mid-Cretaceous sandstones, southwest Montana: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1830, 22 p.
Dyman, T.S., and Maughan, E.K., 1988, Review of geology and petroleum potential of north-central Montana [abs.]: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 72, no. 7, p. 869.
Dyman, T.S., and Nichols, D.J., 1988, Stratigraphy of mid-Cretaceous Blackleaf and lower part of Frontier Formations in parts of Beaverhead and Madison Counties, Montana: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1773, 31 p.
Dyman, T.S., Perry, W.J., Jr., and Nichols, D.J., 1988, Stratigraphy, petrology, and provenance of the Albian Blackleaf Formation and the Cenomanian to Turonian lower part of the Frontier Formation in parts of Beaverhead and Madison Counties, Montana: The Mountain Geologist, v. 25, no. 3, p. 113–128.
Dyman, T.S., Tysdal, R.G., and Nichols, D.G., 1988, Correlation of Lower Cretaceous rocks, Madison Range to Lima Peaks area, Montana: Geological Society of America Abstracts with Program, v. 20, no. 6, p. 413.
Dyni, J.R., Anders, D.E., and King, J.D., 1988, Hydroretorting, Rock-Eval, and Fischer assay analyses of some world oil shales [abs.]: Proceedings of the International Conference on Oil Shale and Shale Oil, Beijing, China, May 16–19, 1988, p. 91–92.
Fox, J.E., 1988, Stratigraphic cross section U–U' showing electric logs of Upper Cretaceous and older rocks, Powder River basin, Powder River County, Montana, and Campbell, Weston, Converse, and Niobrara Counties, Wyoming: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 86–465-U, 1 oversize sheet.
———1988, Stratigraphic cross section V–V' showing electric logs of Upper Cretaceous and older rocks, Powder River basin, Bighorn County, Montana, and Sheridan, Johnson, and Converse Counties, Wyoming: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 86–465-V, 1 oversize sheet.
Frezon, S.E., and Finn, T.M., 1988, Map of sedimentary basins in the conterminous United States: U.S. Geological Survey Map OM-223, scale 1:5,000,000.
Fryberger, S.G., and Schenk, C.J., 1988, Pin-stripe lamination—A distinctive feature of eolian sediments: Sedimentary Geology, v. 55, p. 1–16.
Fryberger, S.G., Schenk, C.J., and Krystinik, L.F., 1988, Stokes surfaces and the effects of near-surface groundwater table on aeolian deposition: Sedimentology, v. 35, p. 21–41.

Gautier, D.L., 1988, McKelvey Forum on energy resources: Geotimes, p. 13–14.

Gautier, D.L., Dyman, T.S., and Takahashi, K.I., 1988, Oil and gas investigations and computer applications, Branch of Petroleum Geology, U.S. Geological Survey, *in* Proceedings of the First Conference on Oil and Gas Information and Data-base Management: Oklahoma Geological Survey Special Publication 88–3, p. 33–39.

Green, A.G., Milkereit, B., Davidson, A., Spencer, C., Hutchinson, D.R., Cannon, W.F., Lee, M.W., Agena, W.F., Behrendt, J.C., and Hinze, W.J., 1988, Crustal structure of the Grenville Front and adjacent terrane: Geology, v. 16, p. 788–792.

Grow, J.A., Hinrichs, E.N., Miller, J.J., Lee, M.W., and Robbins, S.L., 1988, Laramide thrusting of the Bighorn Mountains onto the Powder River basin near Buffalo, Wyoming, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 18. [Also, American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 72, no. 7, p. 870–871 and Geological Society of America Abstracts with Programs, v. 20, no. 7, p. A355.]

Grow, J.A., Klitgord, K.D., and Schlee, J.S., 1988, Structure and evolution of Baltimore Canyon Trough, Chapter 13, *in* Sheridan, R.E., and Grow, J.A., eds., The Atlantic continental margin, U.S.: Geological Society of America, The Geology of North America, v. 1–2, p. 269–290.

Grow, J.A., Klitgord, K.D., Schlee, J.S., and Dillon, W.P., 1988, Representative seismic profiles of U.S. Atlantic continental margin, *in* Sheridan, R.E., and Grow, J.A., eds., The Atlantic continental margin, U.S.: Geological Society of America, The Geology of North America, v. 1–2, pl. 4.

Grow, J.A., and Sheridan, R.E., 1988, U.S. Atlantic continental margin; A typical Atlantic-type or passive continental margin, Chapter 1, *in* Sheridan, R.E., and Grow, J.A., eds., The Atlantic continental margin: Geological Society of America, The Geology of North America, v. 1–2, p. 1–7.

Hester, T.C., Sahl, H.L., and Schmoker, J.W., 1988, Cross sections based on gamma-ray, density, and resistivity logs showing stratigraphic units of the Woodford Shale, Anadarko basin, Oklahoma: U.S. Geological Survey Miscellaneous Field Studies Map MF-2054, 2 sheets.

Higley, D.K., 1988, Detailed descriptions of Sussex Sandstone in five core holes, Powder River basin, Wyoming: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–420, 33 p.

———1988, Core porosity, permeability, and vitrinite reflectance data from the Lower Cretaceous J Sandstone in 141 Denver basin core holes: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–527-A, 6 p. and 88–527-B, two 5 1/4-inch diskettes.

Higley, D.K., and Gautier, D.L., 1988, Burial history reconstruction of the J Sandstone in the Wattenberg Field, Colorado "hotspot," *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 20.

Hutchinson, D.R., Green, A.G., Cannon, W.F., Behrendt, J.C., and Lee, M.W., 1988, Segmentation of the Keeweenawan rift system based on GLIMPCE deep penetration seismic reflection profile from Lake Superior [abs.]: Woods Hole Oceanographic Institute (WHOI) Conference on Segmentation of Oceanic and Continental Rifts, Woods Hole, Mass., January 25–27, 1988, unpaged.

Hutchinson, D.R., Klitgord, K.D., Lee, M.W., and Trehu, A.M., 1988, USGS deep seismic reflection profile across the Gulf of Maine: Geological Society of America Bulletin, v. 100, no. 2, p. 172–184.

Isaacs, C.M., 1988, Marine petroleum source rocks and reservoir rocks of the Miocene Monterey Formation, California, U.S.A., *in* Wagner, H.C., Wagner, L.C., Wang, F.F.H., and Wong, F.L., eds., Petroleum resources of China and related subjects: Houston, Circum-Pacific Council for Energy and Mineral Resources, Earth Science Series, v. 10, p. B25–B48.

———1988, Field trip guide to the Miocene Monterey Formation, Salinas and Santa Barbara areas, California, *in* Blueford, J.R., and Isaacs, C.M., eds., Mesozoic and Cenozoic siliceous sediments of California: 28th International Geological Congress Field Trip Guidebook T109, p. 21–50.

Isaacs, C.M., and Stanley, R.G., 1988, The Santa Maria project, central California coast, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 22–23.

Jensenius, Jorgen, and Burruss, R.C., 1988, Biodegradation in Danish North Sea oil fields—Evidence from oil inclusions and sulphur isotopes [abs.]: 18th Nordiske Geologisk Vintermode, Copenhagen, January 12–14, 1988, unpaged.

Johnson, R.C., Crovelli, R.A., Spencer, C.W., and Mast, R.F., 1988, Assessment of gas resources in low-permeability sandstones of Upper Cretaceous Mesaverde Group, Piceance basin, Colorado [abs.]: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 72, no. 2, p. 202.

———1988, An assessment of gas resources in low-permeability sandstones of the Upper Cretaceous Mesaverde Group, Piceance basin, Colorado, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 23–24.

Johnson, S.Y., Schenk, C.J., Anders, D.E., and Tuttle, M.L., 1988, A closer look at the Schoolhouse Tongue of the Weber Sandstone, northwest Colorado, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 24. [Also, American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 72, no. 2, p. 202.]

Johnson, S.Y., Schenk, C.J., and Karachewski, J.A., 1988, Pennsylvanian and Permian depositional systems and cycles in the Eagle basin, northwest Colorado, *in* Holden, G.S., ed., Geological Society of America Centennial Meeting Field Trip Guidebook: Colorado School of Mines Professional Contribution 12, p. 156–175.

Keighin, C.W., and Flores, R.M., 1988, Clay minerals in

Cretaceous and Paleocene shales, Powder River basin, Wyoming: Geological Society of America Abstracts with Programs, v. 20, no. 7, p. A120.

King, J.D., 1988, Kinetic models of organic reactions applied to burial history of sedimentary basins, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 25.

King, J.D., and Pawlewicz, M.J., 1988, Thermal maturity, *in* Magoon, L.B., ed., Petroleum systems of the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1870, p. 30–32.

Kingston, John, 1988, The undiscovered recoverable petroleum resources of southern Africa: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–223, 172 p.

———1988, Undiscovered petroleum resources of Indonesia: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–379, 225 p.

Kulik, D.M., and Perry, W.J., Jr., 1988, The Blacktail-Snowcrest foreland uplift and its influence on structure of the Cordilleran thrust belt—Geological and geophysical evidence for the overlap province in southwestern Montana, *in* Schmidt, C.J., and Perry, W.J., Jr., eds., Interaction of the Rocky Mountain foreland and Cordilleran thrust belt: Geological Society of America Memoir 171, p. 291–306.

Law, B.E., 1988, Coal-bed methane, *in* Magoon, L.B., ed., Petroleum systems of the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1870, p. 52–53.

———1988, Geologic framework and hydrocarbon plays in the southwestern Wyoming province: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–450-F, 32 p.

———1988, Coal-bed methane, *in* National energy and resource issues—Geologic perspective and the role of geologic information: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1850, p. 63–64.

Law, B.E., and Clayton, J.L., 1988, The role of thermal history in the preservation of oil at the south end of the Moxa Arch, Utah and Wyoming—Implications for the oil potential in the southern Green River basin, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 27.

Law, B.E., and Spencer, C.W., 1988, Tight gas reservoirs, *in* Magoon, L.B., ed., Petroleum systems of the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1870, p. 48–49.

Law, B.E., Spencer, C.W., Crovelli, R.A., Mast, R.F., Dolton, G.L., Charpentier, R.R., and Wandrey, C.J., 1988, Assessment of gas contained in overpressured low-permeability reservoirs in the Greater Green River basin of Wyoming, Colorado, and Utah, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 27–28.

Lee, K.Y., and Masters, C.D., 1988, Geologic framework, petroleum potential and field locations of the sedimentary basins in China: U.S. Geological Survey Miscellaneous Investigations Series Map I-1952, scale 1:5,000,000.

Lee, M.W., 1988, Processing of vertical seismic profile data, Chapter IV, *in* Balch, A.H., ed., A seismic-stratigraphic investigation of the Madison and associated aquifers—Application to ground-water exploration, Powder River basin, Montana-Wyoming: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1330, p. 31–54.

Lee, M.W., Agena, W.F., and Hutchinson, D.R., 1988, Processing techniques for deep crustal marine multichannel reflection seismic data—Examples from the Great Lakes, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 28.

———1988, Processing of the GLIMPCE multichannel seismic data: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–225, 48 p.

Lickus, M.R., and Law, B.E., 1988, Structure contour map of the Greater Green River basin, Wyoming, Colorado, and Utah: U.S. Geological Survey Miscellaneous Field Studies Map MF-2031, scale 1:500,000.

Lidz, B.H., 1988, Upper Cretaceous (Campanian) and Cenozoic stratigraphic sequence, northeast Caribbean (St. Croix, U.S. Virgin Islands): Geological Society of America Bulletin, v. 100, p. 282–298.

Lockridge, J.P., and Pollastro, R.M., 1988, Shallow Upper Cretaceous Niobrara gas fields in the eastern Denver basin, *in* Goolsby, S.M., and Longman, M.W., eds., Occurrence and petrophysical properties of carbonate reservoirs in the Rocky Mountain region: Rocky Mountain Association of Geologists, p. 63–74.

Magoon, L.B., 1988, Oil and gas section, *in* Bohn, Diedra, ed., 1988 annual report on Alaska's mineral resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1023, 56 p.

———ed., 1988, Petroleum systems of the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1870, 68 p.

———1988, The petroleum system—A classification scheme for research and resource assessment, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 29–31.

———1988, The petroleum system—A classification scheme for research, exploration, and resource assessment, *in* Magoon, L.B., ed., Petroleum systems of the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1870, p. 2–15.

Magoon, L.B., and Bird, K.J., 1988, Evaluation of petroleum source rocks in the National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska, using organic-carbon content, visual kerogen, and vitrinite reflectance, *in* Gryc, George, ed., Geology and exploration of the National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska, 1974 to 1982: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1399, p. 381–450.

Magoon, L.B., Bird, K.J., Claypool, G.E., Weitzman, D.E., and Thompson, R.H., 1988, Organic geochemistry, hydrocarbon occurrence, and stratigraphy of government-drilled wells, North Slope, Alaska, *in* Gryc, George, eds., Geology and exploration of the National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska, 1974 to 1982: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1399, p. 483–486.

Magoon, L.B., and Claypool, G.E., 1988, Geochemistry of oil occurrences, National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska, *in* Gryc, George, ed., Geology and exploration of the

National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska, 1974–1982: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1399, p. 519–550.

Mast, R.F., Dolton, G.L., Crovelli, R.A., Powers, R.B., Charpentier, R.R., Root, D.H., and Attanasi, E.D., 1988, Estimates of undiscovered recoverable oil and gas resources for onshore and State offshore areas of the United States, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 31–32. [Also American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 72, no. 2, p. 218.]

Masters, C.D., 1988, The world energy resources program, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 32.

Meyer, R.F., 1988, Heavy oil and natural bitumen, *in* Magoon, L.B., ed., Petroleum systems of the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1870, p. 57–59.

Meyer, R.F., and Powley, D.E., 1988, Subsidence and the petroleum industry—An overview [abs.]: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 72, no. 2, p. 223.

Milkereit, B., Green, A.G., Lee, M.W., Agena, W.F., and Spencer, C., 1988, Pre- and post-stack migration and image enhancement technique—Application to GLIMPCE reflection data [abs.]: International Workshop and Symposium on Seismic Probing of Continents and their Margins, Canberra, Australia, July 1–8, 1988, unpaged.

Milkereit, B., Green, A.G., Morel, P., Lee, M.W., and Agena, W.F., 1988, 1986 Great Lakes seismic reflection survey—Migrated data: Geological Survey of Canada Open-File 1592, 33 p., 10 pls.

Miller, J.J., Lee, M.W., Grow, J.A., and Hinrichs, E.N., 1988, Seismic reflection profiles across the eastern Bighorn Mountains between Buffalo and Story, Wyoming: Geological Society of America Abstracts with Programs, v. 20, no. 7, p. A288.

Miller, J.J., Lee, M.W., Grow, J.A., Hinrichs, E.N., and Robbins, S.L., 1988, Seismic reflection profiles across the eastern Bighorn Mountains between Buffalo and Story, Wyoming, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research in energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 36.

Miller, J.J., von Huene, Roland, and Lee, M.W., 1988, A quantitative analysis of a gas hydrate reflection in seismic records near ODP drill site 688 off Peru [abs.]: Eos, Transactions American Geophysical Union, v. 69, no. 44, p. 1403.

Molenaar, C.M., 1988, Cretaceous and Tertiary rocks of the San Juan basin, *in* Baars, D.L., ed., Basins of the Rocky Mountain region, Chapter 8 *of* Sloss, L.L., ed., Sedimentary cover—North American craton, U.S.: Geological Society of America, The Geology of North America, v. D-2, p. 129–134.

———1988, Stratigraphic cross section showing Upper Cretaceous rocks across the San Juan Basin, New Mexico and Colorado, *in* Fassett, J.E., ed., Geology and coal-bed methane resources of the northern San Juan basin, Colorado and New Mexico: Rocky Mountain Association of Geologists Guidebook, p. 21.

———1988, Petroleum geology and hydrocarbon plays of the Albuquerque-San Luis rift basin, New Mexico and Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 87–450-S, 26 p.

———1988, Depositional history and seismic stratigraphy of Lower Cretaceous rocks, National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska and adjacent areas, *in* Gryc, George, ed., Geology and exploration of the National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska, 1974 to 1982: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1399, p. 593–622.

Molenaar, C.M., Bird, K.J., and Magoon, L.B., 1988, Petroleum geology of the coastal plain of the Arctic National Wildlife Refuge, northeastern Alaska [abs]: Colorado Scientific Society Newsletter, March 1988, unpaged.

Molenaar, C.M., Egbert, R.M., and Krystinik, L.F., 1988, Depositional facies, petrography, and reservoir potential of the Fortress Mountain Formation (Lower Cretaceous), central North Slope, Alaska, *in* Gryc, George, ed., Geology and exploration of the National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska, 1974 to 1982: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1399, p. 257–280.

Molenaar, C.M., Révész, I., Bérczi, I., Kovacs, A., Juhasz, G.K., Gajdos, I., and Szanyi, B., 1988, Stratigraphic framework of the Pannonian sequence (Neogene) Békés basin, southeast Hungary, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research in energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 37.

Molenaar, C.M., and Rice, D.D., 1988, Cretaceous rocks of the Western Interior Basin, Chapter 6, *in* Sloss, L.L., ed., Sedimentary cover—North American craton, U.S.: Geological Society of America, The Geology of North America, v. D-2, p. 77–82.

Molenaar, C.M., and Wilson, B.W., 1988, The Frontier Formation and associated rocks of northeastern Utah and northwestern Colorado [abs.]: Rocky Mountain Association of Geologists Newsletter, The Outcrop, v. 37, no. 11, p. 4–5.

Nuccio, V.F., and Schenk, C.J., 1988, Estimation of paleogeothermal gradients and their relationship to the timing of petroleum generation, Eagle basin, northwestern Colorado, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 38. [Also, American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 72, no. 2, p. 229.]

Palacas, J.G., 1988, Characteristics of carbonate source rocks of petroleum, *in* Magoon, L.B., ed., Petroleum systems of the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1870, p. 20–25.

Palacas, J.G., Anders, D.E., and King, J.D., 1988, Use of biological markers in determining thermal maturity of biodegraded heavy oils and solid bitumens [abs.]: Fourth International UNITAR/UNDP Conference on Heavy Crude and Tar Sands, Edmonton, Alberta, Canada, August 7–12, 1988, Conference Program, p. 4.

———1988, Applying aromatic steroids to determination of thermal maturity of biodegraded heavy oils, tar sands,

and bitumens, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geologic Survey Circular 1025, p. 44.

Palacas, J.G., Anders, D.E., King, J.D., and Lubeck, C.M., 1988, Use of biological markers in determining thermal maturity of biodegraded heavy oils and solid bitumens: Fourth International UNITAR/UNDP Conference on Heavy Crude and Tar Sands Edmonton, Alberta, Canada, August 7–12, 1988, Preprints Volume V [supplement], Proceedings, p. 1–43.

Parrish, J.T., and Gautier, D.L., 1988, Upwelling in Cretaceous Western Interior Seaway: Sharon Springs Member, Pierre Shale [abs.]: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 72, no. 2, p. 232.

Parrish, J.T., and Peterson, Fred, 1988, Wind directions predicted from global circulation models and wind directions determined from eolian sandstones of the Western United States; a comparison, *in* Kocurek, Gary, ed., Late Paleozoic and Mesozoic eolian deposits of the Western Interior of the United States: Sedimentary Geology, v. 56, p. 261–282.

Parrish, J.T., and Spicer, R.A., 1988, Late Cretaceous terrestrial vegetation—A polar temperature curve: Geology, v. 16, p. 22–25.

Pawlewicz, M.J., 1988, Microlithotype analysis of three coals from the Upper Cretaceous Menefee Formation near Durango, Colorado, *in* Fassett, J.E., ed., Geology and coal-bed methane resources of the northern San Juan basin, Colorado and New Mexico: Denver, Rocky Mountain Association of Geologists, p. 81–90.

———1988, Thermal maturation of the eastern Anadarko basin, Oklahoma, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 45.

Perry, W.J., Jr., 1988, Structure, *in* Magoon, L.B., ed., Petroleum systems of the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1870, p. 36–38.

Perry, W.J., Jr., Grout, M.A., Hainsworth, T.J., and Tang, R.L., 1988, Wedge model for Late Laramide basement-involved thrusting, Grand Hogback monocline and White River uplift, western Colorado: Geological Society of America Abstracts with Programs, v. 20, no. 7, p. A384–A385.

Perry, W.J., Jr., Haley, J.C., Nichols, D.J., Hammons, P.M., and Ponton, J.D., 1988, Interactions of Rocky Mountain foreland and Cordilleran thrust belt in the Lima region, southwest Montana, *in* Schmidt, C.J., and Perry, W.J., Jr., eds., Interaction of the Rocky Mountain foreland and Cordilleran thrust belt: Geological Society of America Memoir 171, p. 267–290.

Perry, W.J., Jr., and Schmidt, C.J., 1988, Preface, *in* Schmidt, C.J., and Perry, W.J., Jr., eds., Interaction of the Rocky Mountain foreland and the Cordilleran thrust belt: Geological Society of America Memoir 171, p. ix–xi.

Peterson, J.A., 1988, Review of Fifth International Williston Basin Symposium: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 72, no. 8, p. 955.

———1988, Overview—Carbonate reservoir facies, Wyoming and parts of Montana, *in* Goolsby, S.M., and Longman, M.W., eds., Occurrence and petrophysical properties of carbonate reservoirs in the Rocky Mountain Region: Denver, Rocky Mountain Association of Geologists, p. 63–74.

———1988, Phanerozoic stratigraphy of the northern Rocky Mountain region, *in* Sloss, L.L., ed., Sedimentary cover—North American craton, U.S.: Geological Society of America, The Geology of North America, v. D-2, p. 83–107.

———1988, Geologic summary and hydrocarbon plays, Williston basin, Montana, North and South Dakota, and Sioux arch, South Dakota and Nebraska, U.S.: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 87–450-N, 46 p.

Piper, D.Z., and Isaacs, C.M., 1988, Chemistry of phosphate deposits along the western coast of North America: International Geological Correlations Project No. 156 (IGCP-156), 11th Field Workshop and Symposium, Oxford, England, Volume of Abstracts, p. 24.

Pitman, J.E., and Burruss, R.C., 1988, Diagenetic evolution of deep hydrocarbon-bearing rocks in the Ordovician Simpson Group, Anadarko basin, Oklahoma—Evidence from mineralogic, stable isotope, and fluid inclusion studies, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 48.

Pitman, J.E., Franczyk, K.J., and Anders, D.E., 1988, Diagenesis and burial history of nonmarine Upper Cretaceous rocks in the central Uinta basin, Utah: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1787-D, 24 p.

Pollastro, R.M., 1988, Clay mineralogy and diagenetic evolution of deeply buried rocks of the Simpson Group (Middle Ordovician), Anadarko basin, Oklahoma: Clay Minerals Society 25th Annual Meeting, Program and Abstracts, p. 54.

Pollastro, R.M., and Schmoker, J.W., 1988, Relationship of clay-mineral diagenesis to temperature, age, and hydrocarbon generation—An example from the Anadarko basin, Oklahoma, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 49.

Pratt, L.M., and Burruss, R.C., 1988, Evidence for petroleum generation and migration in the Hartford and Newark basins, *in* Froelich, A.J., and Robinson, G.R., Jr., eds., Studies of the early Mesozoic basins of the eastern United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1776, p. 74–79.

Pratt, L.M., Shaw, C., and Burruss, R.C., 1988, Thermal histories of Hartford and Newark basins inferred from maturation indices of organic matter, *in* Froelich, A.J., and Robinson, G.R., Jr., eds., Studies of the early Mesozoic basins of the eastern United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1776, p. 58–63.

Prensky, S.E., 1988, Well-log determination of ash content in Fruitland Formation coals, Southern Ute Indian Reservation, southwest Colorado, *in* Fassett, J.E., ed., Geology and coal-bed methane resources of the northern San Juan basin, Colorado and New Mexico: Rocky Mountain Association of Geologists, p. 91–112.

———1988, Geological applications of well logs—An intro-

ductory bibliography and survey of the well logging literature—Update for the period October 1987 through September 1988: The Log Analyst, v. 29, no. 6, p. 426–443.

Price, L.C., 1988, Surface geochemical oil exploration; A possible powerful tool or a sixty-year fantasy? [abs.]: The Outcrop, Rocky Mountain Association of Geologists Newsletter, v. 37, no. 6, p. 4–5.

Reynolds, M.W., and Palacas, J.G., 1988, Potential petroleum source rocks in the Late Proterozoic Chuar Group, Grand Canyon Arizona [abs.]: The Outcrop, Rocky Mountain Association of Geologists Newsletter, v. 37, no. 9, p. 5.

Reynolds, M.W., Palacas, J.G., and Elston, D.P., 1988, Potential petroleum source rocks in the Late Proterozoic Chuar Group, Grand Canyon, Arizona, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 49–50.

Rice, D.D., 1988, Shelf sedimentation and Turonian (Late Cretaceous) sea level fall, northeastern Wyoming and southwestern South Dakota [abs.]: Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists Research Conference, Events and Rhythms, v. 1, p. 35.

Rice, D.D., and Gaskill, Charles, 1988, Road Log, Day 2, Muddy-Turner field trip: Earth Sciences Bulletin, v. 20, p. 67–73.

Rice, D.D., and Keighin, C.W., 1988, Relation of major sea level fall, regional unconformity, and hydrocarbon accumulations, Upper Cretaceous Turner Sandy Member of Carlile Shale, Black Hills uplift, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 51–52.

Rice, D.D., Threlkeld, C.N., and Vuletich, A.K., 1988, Characterization and origins of natural gases of the Anadarko basin: Oklahoma Geological Survey and U.S. Geological Survey Anadarko Basin Workshop, Abstracts, p. 5.

———1988, Character, origin, and occurrence of natural gases in the Anadarko basin, southwestern Kansas, western Oklahoma, and Texas Panhandle, U.S.A.: Chemical Geology, v. 71, no. 1–3, p. 149–157.

———1988, Identification and importance of coal-bed gases, San Juan basin, northwestern New Mexico and southwestern Colorado, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 51.

———1988, Analyses of natural gases from Anadarko basin, southwestern Kansas, western Oklahoma, and Texas Panhandle: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–391, 5 p.

Rice, D.D., Threlkeld, C.N., Vuletich, A.K., and Pawlewicz, M.J., 1988, Identification and significance of coal-bed gas, San Juan basin, northwestern New Mexico and southwestern Colorado, *in* Fassett, J.E., ed., Geology and coal-bed methane resources of the northern San Juan basin, Colorado and New Mexico: Denver, Rocky Mountain Association of Geologists, p. 51–59.

Roberts, A.A., and Cunningham, K.I., 1988, Helium surveying, a geochemical exploration technique for petroleum on the North Slope, *in* Gryc, George, ed., Geology and exploration of the National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska, 1974 to 1982: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1339, p. 583–589.

Robinson, Keith, 1988, Sequential, time-slice paleogeography of northwest Borneo, southeast Asia, as a basis for the delineation of oil and gas plays, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 54.

Roen, J.B., 1988, Natural gas in fractured shale—The Appalachian Devonian black shale gas system, *in* Magoon, L.B., ed., Petroleum systems of the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1870, p. 50–51.

Ryder, R.T., 1988, Regional stratigraphic framework and genesis of the Madison and associated aquifers, Chapter II, *in* Balch, A.H., ed., A seismic-stratigraphic investigation of the Madison and associated aquifers—Application to ground-water exploration, Powder River basin, Montana-Wyoming: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1330, p. 5–20.

Schenk, C.J., 1988, Sandstone reservoirs, *in* Magoon, L.B., ed., Petroleum systems of the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1870, p. 41–43.

———1988, Chapter VII-D, Major tar sand plays of the United States, *in* U.S. Geological Survey and Minerals Management Service, National assessment of undiscovered conventional oil and gas resources—Working paper: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–373, p. 505–508.

Schenk, C.J., and Fryberger, S.G., 1988, Early diagenesis of eolian dune and interdune at White Sands, New Mexico: Sedimentary Geology, v. 55, no. 1/2, p. 109–120.

Schenk, C.J., Pollastro, R.M., and Schmoker, J.W., 1988, Diagenesis of sandstones in the Permian Upper Minelusa Formation, West Mellott field, Powder River basin, Wyoming, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 55. [Also, American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 72, no. 2, p. 244.]

Schenk, C.J., Schmoker, J.W., Fox, J.E., and Lee, M.W., 1988, Sedimentology of the Permian Upper Minnelusa Formation near Beulah, Wyoming—Analog for subsurface facies in the Powder River basin, Wyoming, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 55.

Schmoker J.W., 1988, A method for determining average values of wire-line-log traces: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–511, 6 p.

Schmoker, J.W., and Gautier, D.L, 1988, Sandstone porosity as a function of thermal maturity—An approach to porosity comparisons and prediction [abs.]: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 72, no. 7, p. 880.

———1988, Sandstone porosity as a function of thermal ma-

turity: Geology, v. 16, p. 1107–1010.

———1988, Dependence of sandstone porosity upon thermal maturity—An approach to prediction and interbasinal comparison of porosity, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 56. [Also, The Outcrop, Rocky Mountain Association of Geologists Newsletter, v. 37, no. 9, p. 4.]

Schmoker, J.W., and Schenk, C.J., 1988, Facies composition calculated from the sonic, neutron, and density log suite, upper part of the Minnelusa Formation, Powder River basin, Wyoming: The Mountain Geologist, v. 25, no. 3, p. 103–112.

Schmoker, J.W., Schenk, C.J., and Pollastro, R.M., 1988, The outcrop expression of the upper part of the Minnelusa Formation near Beulah, Wyoming, compared with the West Mellott Field, Powder River basin, Wyoming [abs.]: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin v. 72, no. 7, p. 880.

Schultz, A.P., and Ball, M.M., 1988, Chapter IV-K, Region 9, Atlantic coastal plain, *in* U.S. Geological Survey and Minerals Management Service, National assessment of undiscovered conventional oil and gas resources—Working paper: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–373, p. 300–306.

Sheridan, R.E., and Grow, J.A., eds., 1988, The Atlantic continental margin, U.S.: Geological Society of America, The Geology of North America, I-2, 610 p.

———1988, Synthesis and unanswered questions, Chapter 32, *in* Sheridan, R.E., and Grow, J.A., eds., The Atlantic continental margin, U.S.: Geological Society of America, The Geology of North America, I-2, p. 595–599.

Sheridan, R.E., Grow, J.A., and Klitgord, K.D., 1988, Geophysical data, Chapter 9, *in* Sheridan, R.E., and Grow, J.A., eds., The Atlantic continental margin, U.S.: Geological Society of America, The Geology of North America, I-2, p. 177–196.

Sheridan, R.E., Mullins, H.T., Austin, J.A., Ball, M.M., and Ladd, J.W., 1988, Geology and geophysics of the Bahamas, *in* Sheridan, R.E., and Grow, J.A., eds., The Atlantic continental margin, U.S.: Geological Society of America, The Geology of North America, p. I-2, pl. 610.

Shinn, E.A., and Lidz, B.H., 1988, Blackened limestone pebbles; Fire at subaerial unconformities, *in* James, N.P., and Choquette, P.W., eds., Paleokarst: New York, Springer-Verlag, p. 117–131.

Spencer, C.W., 1988, Underpressured reservoirs, the other part of the story [abs.]: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 72, no. 7, p. 882.

———1988, Application of geologic studies to enhanced oil recovery (Eos) [abs.]: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 72, no. 7, p. 881–882.

———1988, Primary and secondary migration, *in* Magoon, L.B., ed., Petroleum systems of the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1870, p. 33–35.

———1988, Abnormally high- and low-pressured oil and gas reservoirs—Examples from Rocky Mountain region, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988 Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 58–59.

Spencer, C.W., and Law, B.E., 1988, Unconventional resources, Chapter VII, Western tight gas reservoirs, *in* U.S. Geological Survey and Minerals Management Service, National assessment of undiscovered conventional oil and gas resources—Working paper: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–373, p. 480–500.

Spencer, C.W., and Wilson, R.J., 1988, Petroleum geology and principal exploration plays in the Uinta-Piceance-Eagle basins province, Utah and Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–450-G, 35 p.

Stanley, R.G., 1988, Late Oligocene-early Miocene volcanism, faulting, and sedimentation in west-central California [abs.]: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin , v. 72, no. 3, p. 396.

———1988, Hydrocarbon source potential and thermal maturity of the Sanctuary Formation (middle Miocene), northern foothills of the Alaska Range, *in* Galloway, J.P., and Hamilton, T.D., eds., Geologic Studies in Alaska by the U.S. Geological Survey during 1987: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1016, p. 117–120.

Swift, Ann, and Lee, M.W., 1988, Seismic response of the Jurassic/Cretaceous shelfedge complex, Baltimore Canyon Trough [abs.]: Eos, Transactions American Geophysical Union, v. 69, no. 44, p. 1441.

Swift, B.A., Lee, M.W., and Agena, W.F., 1988, Reprocessing of USGS multichannel line 6 (off Cape May, New Jersey): U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–551, 26 p.

Takahashi, K.I., Dyman, T.S., and Magoon, L.B., 1988, Computer applications, *in* Magoon, L.B., ed., Petroleum systems of the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1870, p. 65–68.

Taylor, D.J., 1988, Geographical information systems as an integrated tool in geophysical data interpretation: Geophysical Information Systems Symposium, Program and Abstracts, p. 43.

Taylor, D.J., and Huffman, A.C., Jr., 1988, Overthrusting in the northwestern San Juan Basin—A new interpretation of the Hogback monocline, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 60.

Tennyson, M.E., and Parrish, J.T., 1988, Tectonic history and petroleum potential of eastern Washington and Oregon, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 61.

———1988, Review of geologic framework and hydrocarbon potential of eastern Oregon and Washington: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File 87–450-O, 41 p.

Ulmishek, G.F., 1988, Types of seals as related to migration and entrapment of hydrocarbons, *in* Magoon, L.B., ed., Petroleum systems of the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1870, p. 39–40.

———1988, Geology and petroleum resources of the Barents-Northern Kara Shelf, *in* Carter, L.M.H., ed., USGS research on energy resources—1988, Program and abstracts; V.E. McKelvey Forum on Mineral and Energy Resources: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1025, p. 63.

von Huene, Roland, and Miller, J.J., 1988, Migrated multichannel seismic reflection records across the Peru continental margin, *in* Reports of the Ocean Drilling Program, v. 112: Washington, D.C., U.S. Government Printing Office, p. 109–130.

———1988, Erosion and accretion along the southern Peru margin, 12° S [abs]: Eos, Transactions American Geophysical Union, v. 69, no. 44, p. 1406.

Wilcox, L.A., Coit, T.A., and Magoon, L.B., 1988, The National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska computer data and graphics system—An aid to geologic interpretation, *in* Gryc, George, ed., Geology and exploration of the National Petroleum Reserve in Alaska, 1974 to 1982: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1399, p. 923–935.

Wise, R.A., and Oliver, H.L., 1988, Reprocessing of marine multichannel seismic reflection profile Line 12, Cape Hatteras, North Carolina, to Shell Mohawk Well, Canada: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–51, 19 p.

Zihlman, F.N., 1988, Documentation and users' guide for USRFILES: DISCO seismic data base information retrieval program: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88–355, 46 p.